User Guide - SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OVERVIEW
Introduction
Key Features
Add-On Components
Terminology
NEW FEATURES
SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS
SUPPORTED FEATURES
GETTING STARTED
SQL SERVER DEPLOYMENT
Interactive Install
Install Software from CommCell Console
SQL SERVER DEPLOYMENT ON A CLUSTER
SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT DEPLOYMENT ON A NON-CLUSTER
Install SQL Server iDataAgent in Veritas Cluster Environment
Install SQL Server iDataAgent in HP Scalable NAS/Polyserve Cluster Environment
SQL SERVER CONFIGURATION
SQL SERVER BACKUP
SQL SERVER RESTORE
ADVANCED
SQL SERVER CONFIGURATION
Understanding the CommCell Console
Creating User-Defined Subclients
Managing Instances
Enabling/Disabling Automatic Database Discovery
Automatically Discovering Databases in Offline States
Excluding Databases from Backups
Managing Databases Deleted from SQL Server
Setting Up Backup Conversion Rules
Enhancing Performance During Backups
Configuring the Number of Log Backups to Run Before a Full Backup
Configuring Log Backups to Run Without Full Backups
Configuring Backups of Locked Databases Using VSS
Configuring Data Streams
Configuring User Accounts for Backups
Modifying an Agent, Instance, or Subclient

Deleting an Agent, Instance, or Subclient

SQL SERVER BACKUP

Full Backups Transaction Log Backups Differential Backups Compressing Backups with Native SQL Compression (for SQL Server 2008 or later) Perform Partial Backup to Exclude Read-Only File Groups Scheduling a Backup Managing Jobs Additional Options

SQL SERVER BROWSE DATA

Understanding the Browse Window Browsing Data Browse from Copies

SQL SERVER RESTORE

Restoring a Database Recovering a Database Restoring System Databases Restoring Files or File Groups Restoring SQL Server Transaction Logs (Step Restore) Applying Log Backups **Restoring SQL Databases to a Point in Time Restoring Only the Logs Restoring SQL Server Databases to a Transaction Mark Restoring a Database With Restricted Access Preserving Replication Settings** Restoring the Captured Changes (For SQL Server 2008 and Above) **Increasing the VDI Timeout** Performing an Out-of-Place Restore **Browsing Data** Listing Media Scheduling a Restore Setting Up Pre-Post Processes Managing Restore Jobs Additional Restore Options

REPLICATION

Replication Using Using Warm Database Restore

DATA AGING Getting Started Extended Retention Rules Data Aging for Transaction, Archive, and Logical Log Backups Stored Procedures SQL Back in Time Restores and Data Aging Rules Prune SQL Logs Only By Days

DISASTER RECOVERY Planning for a Disaster Recovery

Rebuilding the Operating System

Rebuilding the SQL Server Instance Restoring the SQL Server Instance

ADDITIONAL OPERATIONS

Audit Trail Auxiliary Copy License Administration Online Help Links Operating System and Application Upgrades Operation Window Schedule Policy Storage Policy Uninstalling Components

BEST PRACTICES

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

BACKUP TROUBLESHOOTING

RESTORE TROUBLESHOOTING

Overview - SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction

Key Features

Full Range of Backup Options Advanced SQL Server Restore Capabilities Efficient Job Management and Reporting Backup and Recovery Failovers Block Level Deduplication SnapProtect Backup

Terminology

INTRODUCTION

The Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent provides a simplified end-to-end backup and recovery solution for SQL data in your enterprise. The product can be used to perform both full system rebuilds and granular recovery of the data.

KEY FEATURES

FULL RANGE OF BACKUP OPTIONS

The SQL *i*DataAgent provides the flexibility to backup the SQL database from different environments. You can perform a full or incremental backup of the entire instance, individual databases or files and file groups, and the transaction logs at any point of time as described below:

DATABASE BACKUPS

You can backup both the system and user-defined databases. You can comprehensively backup all the databases in an instance or schedule backups for the individual databases. You can also auto-discover new databases to comprehensively manage the backup of all databases in your environment.

TRANSACTION LOG BACKUPS

Transaction log backups captures the transaction log whether the transaction was committed or not. The use of transaction log backups make point in time recovery possible. You can restore to any point in time within the transaction log.

FILE AND FILE GROUPS BACKUPS

Files or file group backups allows you to backup individual files or file groups. This functionality can be critically important, especially for

large databases. Whereas a full database backup captures all files of a given database, file and file group backups allow you to back up selected portions of a database individually. As with database backups, the system provides the option of performing full, differential, and transaction log backups of file and file groups. Note that when running a transaction log backup for a File/File Group subclient, the database log is automatically backed up.

ADVANCED SQL SERVER RESTORE CAPABILITIES

The SQL *i*DataAgent provides the ability to recover databases or entire SQL instance. There is no mounting, no recovery wizards, no extra steps needed – the software takes care of it all. This includes the following abilities:

- Full or Partial Restore databases
- Restore and replay transaction logs
- Set Database state during restore (Recovery, Standby, No Recovery)
- Point-in-time recovery

EFFICIENT JOB MANAGEMENT AND REPORTING

You can view and verify the status of SQL backup and recovery operations from the Job Controller and Event Viewer windows within the CommCell Console.

WHERE TO GO NEXT

Install the SQL *i***DataAgent** Walks you through the process of installing the SQL *i*DataAgent.



You can also track the status of the jobs using Reports, which can be saved and easily distributed. Reports can be generated for different aspects of data management. You also have the flexibility to customize the reports to display only the required data and save them to any specified location in different formats. For example, you can create a backup job summary report to view at-a-glance the completed backup jobs.

In addition, you can also schedule these reports to be generated and send them on email without user intervention.

BACKUP AND RECOVERY FAILOVERS

In the event that a MediaAgent used for the backup or recovery operation fails, it is automatically resumed on alternate MediaAgents. In such cases, the backup or restore job will not restart from the beginning, but will resume from the point of failure. This is especially useful for backups and restores on large SQL databases.

In the event, that a network goes down, the backup and recovery jobs are resumed on alternate data paths. Similarly, in the event of a device failure, the jobs are automatically switched to alternate disk and tape drives.

BLOCK LEVEL DEDUPLICATION

Deduplication provides a smarter way of storing data by identifying and eliminating the duplicate items in a data protection operation.

Deduplication at the data block level compares blocks of data against each other. If an object (file, database, etc.) contains blocks of data that are identical to each other, then block level deduplication eliminates storing the redundant data and reduces the size of the object in storage. This way dramatically reduces the backup data copies on both the disk and tapes.

SNAPPROTECT BACKUP

SnapProtect Backup enables you to create a point-in-time snapshot by temporarily quiescing the data, taking a snapshot, and then resuming live operations. SnapProtect backups work in conjunction with hardware snapshot engines.

TERMINOLOGY

The SQL documentation uses the following terminology:

CLIENT	The computer in which the <i>i</i> DataAgent is installed and contains the data to be secured.			
INSTANCE	The SQL instance used for backup and restore operations.			
SUBCLIENT	The SQL databases within the instance used for backup and restore operations.			

New Features - SQL Server iDataAgent

NEW FEATURES FOR MICROSOFT SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT

DATA PROTECTION OPERATIONS

- For SQL backups, several new SQL settings are now available. Adjusting these parameters may improve performance and you can enable or disable log
 consistency checking. You can accept either the defaults or change the values for parameters such as Block Size, Buffer Count, Maximum Transfer Size, and
 Log Consistency Checking. For more information, see Enhancing Performance During Backups.
- Backups for SQL Server 2008 Enterprise or later can now be compressed by SQL Server before being backed up using Calypso. Backups will be smaller, which should significantly increase the backup speed. However, VSS-enabled and Snap backup types are not supported with this feature. For more information, see Compressing Backups with Native SQL Compression
- The SQL Server iDataAgent now can restore backups of replicated databases. With this feature, a published database can be restored to a server other than
 the server where the database was created. This is relevant only to Calypso full backups and if the database was part of a replication implementation. For
 more information, see Preserving Replication Settings
- A new backup conversion rule for SQL Server *i*DataAgent is now available that when configured, will not convert the log backup to a Full backup if the log backup was performed using software other than Calypso. For more information, see Setting Up Backup Conversion Rules
- You can configure the size of the application data fetched for data transfer during backup operations. Tuning the application read size in alignment with the source application's buffer allocation increases the rate of data transfer during backup. See Advanced - Microsoft SQL Server Configuration on configuring the application read size for more information.
- When SQL databases were automatically discovered but later deleted from an application (e.g., SQL Server), they will be automatically deleted from the
 content of the default subclient when the next backup is run. This alleviates having to delete the databases manually. Databases that are manually added
 and later deleted from an application are not automatically removed from the subclient when the next backup runs and the backup job will complete with
 errors. See Managing Databases Deleted from SQL Server for more information.
- By default, SQL databases are automatically discovered and assigned to the default subclient. You can disable this auto-discovery with a new subclient properties option if you need more control of the SQL databases data protection strategy and wish to manually assign them to subclients instead. For more information, see Enabling/Disabling Automatic Database Discovery.

DATA RECOVERY OPERATIONS

SQL databases can now be restored if they were backed up with the Change Data Capture property enabled. This is a useful SQL Server 2008 feature in that all change activity (insert, update, and delete) is captured and applied to SQL tables. The details of the changes are available in an easily consumed relational format. See Restoring the Captured Changes for more information.

NEW COMMCELL FEATURES SUPPORTED FOR MICROSOFT SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT

DEPLOYMENT

CUSTOM PACKAGE

The Custom Package feature is now extended to almost all products in the Calypso suite. Using Custom Packages, you no longer have to push the entire software DVD through a network, which is especially useful for reducing WAN/LAN payload while installing remote clients.

It is also possible to create Custom Packages using a customized .xml file.

When used in conjunction with the Install Software from the CommCell Console and Automatic Updates features, WAN bandwidth can be drastically reduced during remote site installations. Learn more...

INSTALL FROM THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

The software installation for this component can be initiated and managed from the CommCell Console, which facilitates the building of your CommCell and eliminates the need to manually install the software. Additionally, the installation of this component can be scheduled to occur at a time suitable for your environment. For more information, see Install Software from the CommCell Console.

UNINSTALL FROM THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

This component can be uninstalled using the CommCell Console. The Uninstall Software utility allows you to quickly see a list of the software packages installed on the selected computer, from which you can then select the components to uninstall. With this, you can easily manage removing software components from client computers and MediaAgents in your CommCell without having to directly access each computer. For more information, see Uninstall Components using the CommCell Console.

ADDITIONAL SNAP ENGINE SUPPORT FOR SNAPPROTECT

The following Snapshot Engines are now supported for SnapProtect:

2

- Data Replicator
- Dell EqualLogic
- HP StorageWorks EVA
- IBM XIV
- EMC Celerra

SNAP TEST TOOL

Snap Test tool is now available to test basic snap engine operations. See SnapProtect - Snaptest Tool, for more information.

MULTI-STREAMING FOR SNAPPROTECT

Multi-stream backups are now supported for SnapProtect. You can now use multi-stream when moving data to media.

VOLUME MANAGER SUPPORT

SnapProtect Volume Manager support has been extended to support more configurations for e.g., Multiple Physical Volumes containing one Logical Volume. See Supported Volume Managers, for a complete list of volume managers supported for SnapProtect.

Back to Top

System Requirements - Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent

System Requirements Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Microsoft SQL Server *i*DataAgent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Editions up to the latest Service Pack Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Editions up to the latest Service Pack Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Editions up to the latest Service Pack Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Editions* *See Considerations for SQL Server 2012.

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2012 Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions

WINDOWS 7 Microsoft Windows 7 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1* * Core Editions not supported.

WINDOWS VISTA Microsoft Windows Vista Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

WINDOWS XP Microsoft Windows XP Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

265 MB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth.724 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT SQL SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

- The File System *i*DataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *i*DataAgent, refer to System Requirements Microsoft Windows File System *i*DataAgent.
- If the option to install SQL Server is disabled make sure there is at least one network protocol enabled. For SQL 2005 go to SQL Server Configuration Manager and enable protocols for each instance.
- Microsoft SQL Server Management Objects (SMO) is required on the client machine. By default, SMO is automatically installed with SQL Server 2005 or later versions.

NOTES ON ALWAYSON PROVIDED BY SQL 2012

SQL Server 2012 comes with a new implementation on clusters named AlwaysOn. If you want to protect the AlwaysOn configuration, consider the following:

- Install the SQL *i*DataAgent on all physical nodes of the cluster to protect the SQL instances separately. Note that if the active node, which is part of the Availability Group, performs a successful backup then target databases synchronizing with the active node may have errors during backup.
- If you want to restore any databases that are part of the Availability Group, you must remove the database from the Availability Group. Once the restore completes, you can add the database back.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

Supported Features - Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent

System Requirements Supported Features

The following table lists the features that are supported by this Agent.

FEATURE	SUB-FEATURE	SUPPORT	COMMENTS
ADVANCED BACKUP/ARCHIVE	Data tab - Catalog	~	
	Data tab - Create New Index		
	Data tab - Verify Synthetic		
	Full		
	Job Retry tab	×	
	Media tab - Allow other Schedule to use Media Set	×	
	Media tab - Mark Media Full on Success	~	
	Media tab - Reserve Resources Before Scan		
	Media tab - Start New Media	~	
	Startup tab	✓	
	VaultTracking tab	~	
	Comments	•	 Additional options in the Data tab: Start a Transaction Log Backup After Successful Backup Perform a Partial Backup to Exclude Read-only File Groups Back up the Tail of a transaction Log Data tab - Catalog options are supported for SnapProtect Backup for this agent.
ADVANCED FILE SYSTEM IDATAAGENT OPTIONS	Automatic File System Multi- Streaming		
	On Demand Data Protection Operation		
	Restore by Jobs		
	Restore Data Using a Map File		
	Comments		
ALERTS AND MONITORING	Global Alerts	~	
	lob-Based Alerts*	~	
	Comments		
AUTOMATIC UPDATES	Automatic Updates	~	
	Comments		
BACKUP/ARCHIVE OPTIONS	Differential Backup	~	
	Full Backup	~	
	Incremental Backup		
	Other Backup Types		
	Comments	~	Transaction Log Backups Do Not Truncate Log
	Version 7	~	SnapProtect Backup
BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY	Version 8		
	Version 9		
	Comments		
BROWSE	Browse from Copy Precedence	~	
	Browse the Latest Data	✓	
	Exclude Data Before	~	
	Find		
	Full Backup Transparent		

	Browse		
	Image Browse		
	No Image Browse		
	Page Size		
	Specify Browse Path		
	Specify Browse Time	✓	
	Subclient Browse		
	Use MediaAgent		
	View All Versions		
	Comments		
	Netware cluster		
CLUSTERING			
	Unix Cluster		
	Windows - Microsoft Cluster	~	
	Windows - Non-Microsoft	~	
	Cluster	~	
	comments	-	Microsoft Cluster supports Geo-Dispersed Cluster
			Non-Microsoft Cluster supports VERITAS Cluster and HP Scalable NAS/PolyServe Cluster
COMMAND LINE INTERFACE	Command Line Interface	~	
	Comments	✓	Ocreate backupset and Odelete backupset are not supported.
			An out-of-place restore is supported using Save as Script. For more
			information, refer to Command Line Interface
COMMAND LINE INTERFACE - SPECIFIC COMMANDS	Qcreate - Backup set/SubClient	~	
	Ocreate - Instance	~	
	Odelete - Backup	~	
	set/Subclient		
	Qdelete - Client/Agent	~	
	Qlist globalfilter		
	Qmodify - instance		
	Qoperation - Backup	~	
	Qoperation - move		
	Qoperation - Restore	~	
	Comments	~	Qcreate backupset and Qdelete backupset are not supported.
			For Qoperation-Restore , an out-of-place restore is supported using Save as Script or Argument File. For more information, refer to Command Line Interface.
COMMCELL MIGRATION	CommCell Migration	~	
	Comments	~	CommCell Migration is not supported with SnapProtect backup when using Data Replicator snapshot engine.
CONTENT INDEXING	Offline Content Indexing		
	Comments		
	Basic Retention Rules	✓	
DATA AGING			
	Extended Retention Rules	✓	
	Unique Data Aging Rules	×	
	Comments	~	For the Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgents, data backed up through file/file group subclients cannot be pruned through extended retention rules.
DATA CLASSIFICATION ENABLER	Data Classification Enabler		
	Comments		
	Client Compression	✓	
DATA COMPRESSION			
	Hardware Compression	×	
		¥	
	Data Encryption Surgert	~	
DATA ENCRYPTION		•	
	Third-party Command Line		
	Encryption Support		
	Multiplexina	~	
DATA MULTIPLEXING			
	Comments	*	For Data Multiplexing , the SQL Server does not support the

		1	multiplexing of streams "with each other" on to the same media
			when a data protection operation is performed using the CommCell
			Console. However, the streams will be multiplexed when the
	MediaAgent Deduplication	~	operation is performed using the command line interface.
DEDUPLICATION			
	Source Deduplication	~	
	Comments		
ERASE BACKUP/ARCHIVED DATA	Erase Data by Browsing		
	Erase Stubs		
	Comments		
	Global Filters		
GLOBAL FILTERS			
	Comments		
INSTALLATION	Custom Package	•	
	Decoupled Install	✓	
	Remote Install	✓	
	Restore Only Agents	~	
	Silent Install	 ✓ 	
	Comments	~	To install this agent as restore only, see Installing Microsoft SQL Server as Restore Only
INSTALLING 32-BIT COMPONENTS ON A MICROSOFT WINDOWS X64 PLATFORM	Install 32-bit On x64	~	
	Comments		
100 DECTART DATA PROTECTION	Not Restartable		
JOB RESTART - DATA PROTECTION	Restarts from the Reginning		
	Restarts from the Beginning		
	of the Database		
	Restarts from the Point-of-	✓	
	Failure		
	Comments		
10B RESTART - DATA RECOVERY	Not Restartable	~	
	Restarts from the Beginning		
	Restarts from the Beginning		
	of the Database		
	Restarts from the Point-of-		
	Failure		
	Comments		
LIST MEDIA	Specific Backup Set or Instance	•	
	List Media Associated with		
	List Media Accordated with		
	Specific Files and/or Folders		
	List Media Associated with		
	Specific Jobs		
	Comments		
MULTI INSTANCING	Multi Instance		
	Comments		
	Pre/Post Process with Data	~	
PRE/POST PROCESSES	Protection and Recovery		
	Comments		
RESTORE/RECOVER/RETRIEVE DESTINATIONS	Cross-Application Restores (Different Application version)	~	
	Cross-Platform Restores -		
	Cross-Platform Restores -	~	
	Same Operating System -		
	Different Version		
	In-place Restore - Same	~	
	pain/ destination - Same Client		
	Out-of-place Restore -	✓	
	Different path/ destination		
	Out-of-place Restore - Same	 Image: A set of the set of the	
		1	1

	path/ destination - Different		
	Client Restore Data Using a Map		
	File		
	Restore to Network		
	System		
	Comments	~	See Advanced - Microsoft SQL Server Restore.
RESTORE/RECOVER/RETRIEVE OPTIONS	Automatic Detection of Regular Expressions		
	Filter Data From Recover Operations		
	Rename/ Redirect Files on Restore	~	
	Restore Data Using Wildcard Expressions		
	Restore Data with Pre/Post Processes	\checkmark	
	Restore from Copies	~	
	Skip Errors and Continue		
	Use Exact Index		
	Use MediaAgent	•	
	Overwrite Files		
RESTORE/RECOVER/RETRIEVE OVERWRITE OPTIONS	Over write Files		
	Overwrite if file on media is newer		
	Restore only if target exists		
	Unconditional Overwrite	✓	
	only if target is a DataArchiver stub		
	Comments	 ✓ 	Unconditional Overwrite for existing messages.
	Agent Specific Data	~	
	All Agent Types Schedule	~	
	Policy		
	Incremental Storage Policy*	~	
STORAGE POLICIES	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
	Standard Storage Policies		Incremental Storage Policy does not support Transaction Log
	comments		backups for this agent. One storage policy can be created for full backups, while another is
			created for differential backups (using incremental storage policy), and another for transaction log backups.
STORAGE POLICY COPIES	Data Verification	✓	
	Job Based Pruning	 ✓ 	
	Manual Retention	v	
	Mark Job Disabled		
	Selective Copy	•	
	SubClient Policy		
SUBCLIENT POLICIES			
	Comments		
UPGRADE	Netware - Local		
	Unix - Remote (Push)		
	Unix/Linux/Macintosh - Local		
	Unix/Linux/Macintosh - Silent	~	
	Console	-	
	Windows - Local	~	
	Windows - Remote (Push)	<u> </u>	
	Windows - Silent		Ungrade the Agent - Non-Microsoft Clustered Environment on
		•	Windows
USER ADMINISTRATION AND SECURITY	Backup Set/Archive Set		

Subclient	
Comments	

Additional features are listed below:

Activity Control	Auxiliary Copy
CommCell Console	Deconfiguring Agents
GridStor	Languages
Log Files	MediaAgent
Operation window	QR Volume Creation Options
Robust Network Layer	Scheduling
SnapProtect Backup	Snapshot Engines
VaultTracker Enterprise	VaultTracker
Report Output Options	Restore/Recover/Retrieve - Other Options
Cloud Storage	Job Restart - Data Collection

Getting Started Deployment - SQL Server iDataAgent

WHERE TO INSTALL

Install the software on a computer on which SQL Server resides, and satisfies the minimum requirements specified in the System Requirements.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to install remotely on a client computer.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

1. Log on to the client computer as Administrator or as a member of the Administrator group on that computer.

2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.

If you are installing on Windows Server Core editions, navigate to Software Installation Package through command line, and then run **Setup.exe**.

3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

4.	Select the	optio	n to	inst	all s	software	on thi	s comp	outer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Download Software Packages Download the latest software package to perform the install.

Verify System Requirements Make sure that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

S	elect the language you will u English (United States	se during installation.		
			<u>N</u> ext >	<u>C</u> ancel
= Ins	all Software on this cor	nputer		
<i>≡</i> Ins <i>≡</i> Adr	all Software on this cor vanced options	nputer		
≡ Ins ≡ Ad	all Software on this con vanced options	nputer		
= Ins = Ad	all Software on this cor vanced options View documentation websi	nputer		
≓ Ins ≓ Ad ¢	all Software on this cor vanced options View documentation websit View Install Quick Stat Gui	nputer e de (Requires Adobe A	.crobat Reader)	
≓ Ins ≓ Ad ¢	all Software on this cor ranced options View documentation websit View Install Quick Start Gui Install Adobe Acrobat Reac	nputer e de (Requires Adobe A	ucrobat Reader)	

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.



6. Expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Database and then click SQL Server iDataAgent box. Click Next.

7. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

8.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name .
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

	Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform and reasoning by a may be divabled Disk Space (Req/Recommended) Installation Folder: 0 MB / 0 MB Temporary on C: drive: 0 MB / 0 MB Special Registry Keys In Use
Install Agents for Restore Only < Back	Next > Cancel
Installer	
Configure fitewall services	igure firewall services below.
Configure firewall services	
Please specity how Windows Firewall is limiting network traffic. Wi connection from here to a Commiserve's turnel port, whether all co Commiserve are blocked, and asterup should instead expect Commis machine, or whether there is a Proxy in between.	nether it is possible to open innections toward serve to connect back to this
C This machine can open connection to CommServe on tunnel processing of the commServe on tunnel processing of tunnel processing of the commServe on tunnel processing of the commServe on tunnel processing of tunnel processing	ort
C CommServe can open connection toward this machine	
C CommServe is reachable only through a proxy	
Installer N	ext > Cancel
Installer	X
CommServe Name	

License Agreement

Installer

nstaller

Select Platforms

Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.

• I accept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.

Select the platforms you want to configure.

End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)

Fud Hoav I issues Agreement

^

~

< Back Next > Cancel

Installer	×
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name	2
CommServe Client Name	
CommServe Host Name [Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com)	
Inty-computer inty-company, com	
Installer < Back Cancel	_

9. Click Next.

		Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths:
		Select a client name Station Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi mycompany com IP Address(et) for the selected host.
		Installer
10.	Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.	Installer Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows
	Click Next .	Firewall
	This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.	Windows Firewall is ON
	It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
		Installer
11.	Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
	Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
	Click Next.	
	 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: / : * ? " < > # 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Destination Folder
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB C: 92
4.0		
12.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer Client Group Selection
	Click Next .	Select a client group for the client.
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels file Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
		Installer
13.	Click Next.	

Installer

X

X

×

14. Click Next.

15. Select a storage policy from the **Storage Policy** list. Click **Next**.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 20.

Installer					
Schedule Install of Automatic Updates					
Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded undates					
duve loaded updates.					
Schedule Install of Auto	matic Updates				
C Once					
6 Marth	Time: 08:31:12 PM				
(* weekly	Monday				
	C Wednesday C Thursday				
	C Friday C Saturday				
	C Sunday				
installer	- Conneay				
	< Back Next> Cancel				
Installer					
Select Clobal Eilter Onti	one				
Select the Global Filter Option:	for the Agent.				
Global Filters provides the abi	ity to set exclusions within a CommCell to filter out data from data				
protection operations on all a	ents of a certain type.				
Us	e Cell level policy				
CLAR	vavs use Global Filters				
C Do	not use Global Filters				
Installer					
	< Back Next> Cancel				
Installer	X				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio	n				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the	n default subclient to be				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy	n default subclient to be : Desktop Backup from the pull-down list.				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Interest	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list.				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unas:	n default subclient to be : Desktop Backup from the pull-down list.				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unas:	n default subclient to be * Desktop Backup from the pull-down list.				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unas:	n default subclient to be : Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. gned				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop of Select a storage policy Unase	n default subclient to be : Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. igned				
Installer Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unas:	n default subclient to be :Desktop Backup from the pulk-down list. preed				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unass Installer	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pred				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unas: Installer	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. Spred				
Installer Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unase Installer Installer	n default subclient to be : Desktop Backup from the puli-down list. grand < Back Next > Cancel				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Unass Installer Installer Storage Policy Selection	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. greed				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. gened				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pulldown list. pred < Back Next > Cancel default subclient to be				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pulldown list. pred < Back Next > Cancel default subclient to be				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Description	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pred <back next=""> Cancel default subclient to be Desktop Backup</back>				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pped Cancel Cancel Cancel Cancel Cancel Desktop Backup Cancel Desktop Backup				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pred Cancel Cancel Cancel Cancel Cancel Cancel Cancel Cancel				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pred K Back Next > Cancel default subclient to be tDesktop Backup				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pred (Back Next> Cancel n default subclient to be Desktop Backup				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. greed < Back Next> Cancel				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pried Cancel Idefault subclient to be Desktop Backup				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pulldown list. pred K Back Next> Cancel Cancel Desktop Backup				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Installer Insta	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pred Cancel Cancel Cancel In default subclient to be Desktop Backup				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop o Installer In	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. pred < Back Next > Cancel				

16. Click Next.

When **Auto Discover Instances** is enabled, new instances are automatically discovered every 24 hours.

17. Click Next.

18. Click Next.

19. Click Finish.

QL Auto Discovery Option	n
elect auto discovery option for S	GQL
Auto discover instar	nces
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
taller	2
mmary	
ummary of install selections	
 Setup has enough information install settings, click Next to be 	to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the egin copying files.
Destination Path = C:\Program	n Files\
Interface Name = audi.mycom	pany.com
Job Results Path = C:\Program	n Files Job Results
Global Filters = Use Cell level p	oolicy 👱
<	2
Installer	
aller hedule Reminder	< Back Next> Cancel
aller hedule Reminder ab schedule creation reminder	KBack Next> Cancel
<mark>əller hedule Reminder</mark> xb schedule creation reminder	< Back Next > Cancel
aller hedule Reminder ob schedule creation reminder Please note:	Cancel
aller hedule Reminder b schedule creation reminder Please note: You situe With allementer der sete a Job	Cancel
aller hedule Reminder ob schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer.	Cancel Cancel Cancel Schedule for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on
aller hedule Reminder ob schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore conventions	Cancel Cancel Cancel Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on o allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup
aller hedule Reminder ob schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations.	Cancel < Back
aller, hedule Reminder b schedule creation reminder Please note: You till need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedules creation can b administration interface	Cancel Cancel Cancel Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on o allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup e accomplished through the CommCell Console
aller hedule Reminder bischedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface.	Cancel Cancel • Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on • allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup • accomplished through the CommCell Console
aller hedule Reminder bischedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules gree required t and restore gerefacions. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface.	Cancel Cancel • Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on o allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup • accomplished through the CommCell Console
aller hedule Reminder bb schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface.	Cancel < Back
aller hedule Reminder ob schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface.	Cancel < Back
aller: hedule Reminder beschedule creation reminder Please note: You till need to create e Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface.	Cancel < Back
aller hedule Reminder beschedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required th and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface.	Cancel Cancel • Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on • allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup • accomplished through the CommCell Console
aller hedule Reminder bischedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface.	Cancel C
aller hedule Reminder be schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface. Installer Installer	Cancel Ca
aller hedule Reminder ob schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedules reare required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface. Installer aller mpletion Report	Cancel
aller: hedule Reminder be schedule creation reminder Please note: You till need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required to and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be administration interface. Installer aller mpletion Report stup complete	Cancel C
alter hedule Reminder be schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface. Installer alter mpletion Report stup complete	Cancel Cancel • Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on • allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup • accomplished through the CommCell Console
aller hedule Reminder hedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface. Installer aller mpletion Report stup complete tware installation completed are	Cancel < Back
a ller hedule Reminder ob schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface. Installer alter mpletion Report stup complete ftware installation completed aux at the website below to downlow	Cencel < Back
aller, hedule Reminder hedule creation reminder Please note: You till need to create e Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedules are required t and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface. Installer Installer Installer tware installation completed sus it the website below to downloas it finish logomater Schun	< Back
aller hedule Reminder be schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job this client computer. Job Schedules are required than and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can b administration interface. Installer aller mpletion Report stup complete ftware installation completed suu at the website below to downloas ck Finish to complete Setup.	< Back

If you already have a storage policy se at the bottom of the page to continue. If you already have a storage policy selected in step 15, Click Next > button available

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

20 To create a storage policy, you must have configured a library in the CommCell.

- If you do not already have a library configured, go to Disk Library Creation.
- If you have a library configured, go to Storage Policy Creation.

DISK LIBRARY CREATION:

- 1. From the CommCell Console, click the **Backup Target** button on **EZ Operations Wizard**.
- 2. Click **Disc Library (For backup to disc)** and click **Next**.
- 3. Click Use Local Disk.

Type the name of the folder in which the disc library must be located in the **Enter backup destination folder** box or click the **Browse** button to select the folder.

Click Next.

If you click the **Use Network Share** option you will be prompted for the credentials (user name and password) to access the share.

- 4. Click Next.
- 5. Click Finish.

This will create a library and Storage Policy. Click the Next > button available at the bottom of the page to continue.

STORAGE POLICY CREATION

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click ${\bf Next}.$

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- Select **Yes** to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

• Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

This will create a storage policy. Click the Next \blacktriangleright button available at the bottom of the page to continue.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select Tools | Add/Remove Software | Install Software.





2. Click Next.

3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which SQL Server resides. For example: apple.domain.company.com Click Next.

Install Wizard	
This wizard guides you through the steps required to in	istall software on computers.
Click Next to continue.	
1	
< Beck (Next >) Save As Script	Finish Cancel Help
Installer	
Select the computer's operating system	
() Windows	
O Unix and Linux	
Ŭ	
1	
< Bock Next > Save As Script	Finish Cancel Help
Installer	
Salact how to discover the computers for install	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Manualy select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of comput Automatically discover computers	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Manualy select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Manualy select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computer Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install I funday select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of comput Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Manualy select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of comput Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Manualy select computers Manualy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Manualy select computers Manualy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Image of the selected list of computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Automatical only on the selected list of computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computer Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Select computers Software will be installed Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Manualy select computers Software will be installed Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Each Less Software will be discovered when the job runs.	rers.
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Solver will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discovere computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	Ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Select computers Select how to discover computers Computers will be docovered when the job runs. Computers will be docovered when the job runs. Select Each Each Select Sele	Ing the software ters. Fresh Cancel Usep
Select how to discover the computers for install I multiply select computers I multiply select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. I multiply the discovered when the job runs.	Ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Select now to discover the computers Select outputers Select will be installed only on the selected lat of computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Select be decovered when the job runs.	Ing the software
Select how to discover the computers for install Install select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Installer Enter the host names of the computers Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line Installer	Frah Cancel Ethip
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Solver will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Image: Solve As Solver Installer Enter the host names of the computers Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line agele.domain.compeny.com	Ing the software Ing th
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Select computers Select now will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Image: Select Selec	Fresh Cancel Usep
Select how to discover the computers for install Select how to discover the computers Select how to discover computers Computers will be installed only on the selected list of comput Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Select Use Select the post number of the computers Please enter the host names of the computers. Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line argele-domain.company.com	Import from File Import from File Import from Active Directory Select from existing clerits
Select how to discover the computers for install Select how to discover the computers software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Select Software w	Ing the software Inst. I
Select how to discover the computers for install Select how to discover the computers software will be installed only on the selected list of computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Select the discovered when the job runs. Select the discovered when the job runs. Installer Enter the host names of the computers, one per line Septe-domain.company.com	Ing the software Inst. From Cancel Ethic Import from File Import from File Import from Active Directory Select from existing dents
Select how to discover the computers for install Image select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Image select the discovered when the job runs. Each manage selected with the point of the computers Field the field the selected se	Import from File Import from File Select from existing clients
Select how to discover the computers for install Image: Select computers Select we libe installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Image: Select Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Select Automatically discover computers Select Automatically discover computers Image: Select Automatically discover computers Image: Select Automatically discover computers Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line Teples domain.company.com	Import from File Import from File Import from File Select from existing dents
Select how to discover the computers for install Installed only on the selected lat of computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Select Use Software Software Software Software Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Select Use Software S	Import from File Import from File Import from Addive Directory Select from existing dients
Select how to discover the computers for install Select how to discover the computers Software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Select the discovered when the	Ing the software Inst. Fresh Cancel Help Import from File Import from File Select from existing dients
Select how to discover the computers for install Select how to discover the computers software will be installed only on the selected lat of computers and the installed only on the selected lat of computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Select Used User Selected User Selected Later	Import from File Import from File Import from File Select from existing clients
Select how to discover the computers for install Image select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Image selected with the poly of the selected list of the s	Ing the software tess. Frink Cancel Eth Import from File Import from File Select from existing clients
Select how to discover the computers for install Install select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be indecovered when the job runs. Legach Legac	Import from File Import from File Import from File Select from existing dents
Select how to discover the computers for install Select how to discover the computers Sense will be installed only on the selected list of computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Legack Ext Enter the host names of the computers Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line apple.domain.company.com	Ing the software ters. Fresh Cancel Help Import from File Import From Active Directory Select from existing dients
Select how to discover the computers for install The select computers Automatically decover computers Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Automatically decover devices Computers will be decovered when the job runs. Sever Ad Scipt Installer Enter the host names of the computers Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line apple domain.company.com Computers will be decovered when the job runs.	Trach Cancel EMP Frach Cancel EMP Frach Cancel EMP

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the client computer. Click Next.

The user must be an Administrator or a member of the Administrator group on that computer.

8. Select SQL Server *i*DataAgent. Click Next.

9.

- Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - From **Storage Policy to use** list, click storage policy.
 - Click Next.

Installer
Select Software Cache
To use current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache settings check
Overnde Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
Software Cache: murche domain com any con
mulphy.domain.company.com
ZBack Mark & Course As Course - Course - Links
Klow Berts Sale to Subt 11001 Carton Tah
Installer
Enter Account Information
The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clients, the user should have access to all clients.
Reuse Active Directory credentials
User Name: Example:domain\username
Password:
Confirm Password:
Sack Next > Save As Seriet Finish Cancel Hale
Teach Course Course Courses
Teb
Inteller
Installer SelectPackage(s) to install
Inteller Select Package(s) to Install Control of the second sec
Installer SelectPackage(s) to Install Of the Second Package(s) Of t
Instiller Select Package(s) to Install Widden Fis dytan Datakyet Provide Charles and the install Widden Fis dytan Datakyet Provide Charles and the install Select Package(s) to Inst
Installer Installer Select Package(s) to Install Widden Fis System Datakget Province Dat
Inteller Select Package(s) fo Install Galaxies Select Package(s) fo Install Control to the select for the s
Inteller Inteller Select Package(s) to install Provide Dadget Provide Dadget Provide Dadget Provide Dadget Provide Dadget Provide Dadget Provide Dadget Provide Dadget Provide Dadget
Inteller Inteller Select Package(s) to Initial Provide Cadebox Provide Cade
Inteller Inteller Select Prochage(t) to Intall Control to Datapet Control to Datap
Intellif Intellif Select Package(s) to Install Metabolic All All All All All All All All All Al
Inteller Inteller Select Package(s) to Install Wedden File Space Datagers Brig ver Norsko Datagers Brigs ver Norsko Brigs v
Instiller Select Package(s) to Install Wedgen Ref System Diadoget Province Deadoget Province Province Deadoget Province Deadoget Province Province Province Province Deadoget Province Provi
Intelle Select Package(s) to Install Wedden File System Ditalignet Provide Disdaget Pro
Intelle Sector Holds Projetto Exclarget
Intellif Intellif Sector Hotage Intellif Department
Install Image:
Install Image:
Inteller Select Picklage(t) to intall Image: Ima
Inteller Select Package(t) to Intall Out black fits (Sate Database) Out black fits (Sate Database) <t< td=""></t<>
Installer Select Package(t) to Install Wedden für delage Wedden für delage Dig und Norden delage
Inteller Sector Hocksie Provide Sector Hocksie Provide Provide <t< td=""></t<>
Install Image:
Intellif United intellift Select Plackage(s) to intall Intellif Intellift Intellift
Image:
Image:
Image:
Intelle Intelle Sector Holds Intelle <
India India <t< td=""></t<>
Intell Intell Sector Partage(p) to intall Image intell models Image intell models <t< td=""></t<>
Intell Intell Select Plackage(s) to intall Intell

10. Click Next.

When **Auto Discover Instances** is enabled, new instances are automatically discovered every 24 hours.

11. Click Reboot (if required) and then click Next.

When **Reboot (if required)** is selected, the install program will automatically reboot the client computer if a reboot is required during installation.

12. Click Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

Enter the instail Options for the selected Software
Agent Specific Settings
G Components
SQL Agent Information
V Auto ascover instances
< Back Bent> Is Sive An Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer 🛛
Enter Additional Install Options
Installer Plays
Rebot (if required)
It ill Browser Processes (if required)
Ignore Running Jobs
Stop Oracle Services (If required)
Advanced Options
🕑 Delete Packages After Install
Ignore Clerichtost Name Conflict Instal Breat Long Longing
Instal Agents For Restore Only
Optional Settings
Job Result Directory Path
CND Port 8400 14
Evingic Port Bildz
Install Directory Log File Lacation
CommGerve Host Name
Clack Boot Screet Frish Cancel Brief
Installer
Installer 🛛
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job
Please Select When To Run The Job
Please Select When To Run The Job
Please Select When To Run The Job
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job Sob Initiation Commediate Run this job now
Please Select When To Run The Job
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job 3ob Initiation O Immediate Run this job now O Schedule
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job Dob Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job 3bb Initiation Immediate Run this job now O Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job 3bb Initiation © Inmediate Run this job now © Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job 3bb Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job Job Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Select When To Run The Job 3ob Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job 3bb Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Plattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job 3bb Inliation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Initiation Immedate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job 3bb Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job 3bb Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Plattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Inflation Immediate Run this job now O Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sol Intidelor Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Enteth Seve As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configur
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Initiation © Innedate Run this job now © Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Pattern Schedule Schedule Pattern
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Intidetion Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Concol Pattern Pattern <
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Indision Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configur
Installer Image: Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Market Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Market Schedule Pattern Schedule Pattern Market Schedule Pattern Schedule Pattern Market Schedule Pattern Schedule Pattern <t< td=""></t<>
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Inflation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Indexion Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configur
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Indexion Immediate Immediate Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Exect (Deck) Save As Script Finish Cancel Hear with all subset diges and dia Frash to no the sphemediately or dol. Save As Script Finish Summary Sever As Script Rese with Pattern y redemains sharedy installed: Yes Reserver yet of Immediate to the sphemediate of the State and the sphemediate installed: Yes Reserver the Collex Discovery indexing shared installed: Yes Reserver yet Collex Discovery indexing shared installed: Yes Reserver the Collex Discovery indexing shared installed: Yes Reservery the Collex Discovery indexing shared installed: Yes Reserver to Collex Discovery indexing shared installed: Yes Reservery collex Discovery installed: Yes Reserver to Collex Discovery indexing shared installed: Yes Reservery collex Discovery installed: Yes Reserver: **** Toole Discovery installed: Yes Reserver: **** Toole Discovery installed: Yes Reservery colex Discovery installed: Yes
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Inflation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern State Type Of Chan Blackward Mattalater Parameter Came Ather Directory conducts with Ski Agenta alwardy installet. Yes Reare Ather Directory conducts with Ski Agenta alwardy installet. Yes Reare Ather Directory conducts with Mattalater Parameter Imatall Igheim: Yes Imatall Igheim: Yes
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sole Indexion Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Indision Indision Innedate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Edged. Edged. Edged. Edged. Stread Stread Installer Stread Stread Edged. Installer Ves Extend Actio Patteria Edged. Installer Ves Extend Actio Patteria Edged. Installer Ves Extend Actio Patteria Edged. Installand Ves Extend Actio Patteria Edged.
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Inflation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure
Installer Image: Solid Comparison of the solid product of the solid
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sob Indision Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Please Solect When To Run The Job Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configur
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Sole Inflation Image: Solect When To Run The Job Image: Solect The Job Image: Solect When To Run The Job Image: Solect The Job Run To Run The Job medded or dol Sone As Script: Frich Cancel Help Image: Solect Type Of Chen Discovery: Manady select computer: Exclude Screency Computers with SNA general stready installet: Yee Rese with Black Solect Computer: Exclude Screency Computers with SNA general stready installet: Yee Rese with Black: The Image: The Screence The Schemed of Commod Research Screence The Schemed of Commod Research Schemed Of Commod Researcon Schemed Of Commod Researcon Schemed Of Coma
Installer Please Solect When To Run The Job Image: Configure Schedule Image: Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern <td< td=""></td<>

14. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.



ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION METHODS

Custom Package

Create a compact software package for quick deployment to multiple clients.

Decoupled Install

Install the software first and later register the client in the CommCell.

Remote Install

Deploy the software from CommCell Console on multiple clients.

Installing Restore only Agents

Setup a client in the CommCell for restore purposes.

Silent Install

Deploy the software silently on multiple clients.

Getting Started Deployment on a Cluster - SQL Server *i*DataAgent



SKIP THIS PAGE IF YOU ARE NOT INSTALLING THIS AGENT ON A CLUSTER.

Click Next > to continue with the deployment.

WHERE TO INSTALL

Install the software from the active node in the cluster group. Make sure the cluster group satisfies the minimum requirements specified in the System Requirements.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Download Software Packages Download the latest software package to perform the install.

Verify System Requirements

Select the language you will use during installation English (United States)

-

Make sure that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

- 1. Log on to the active node as the Domain User with administrative privileges to all nodes on the cluster.
- Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package. 2.
- з. Select the required language.

Click Next.

5.

Click Next.

4	C - I + +		:			+l- : -	
4.	Select the	option to	Install	sontware	on	this	computer

Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

	Next > Can	cel
_		
	Install Software on this computer	
	= Advanced options	
	View documentation website	
	View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)	
	Install Adobe Acrobat Reader	
	\$ Exit	
nst	taller	
Li	cense Agreement	
F	Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.	
		^
	End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement	
	Software Release 9.0.0	
	(including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)	
	Fud Hoan Lisonga Agmamant	~

< Back

Next > Cancel

I accept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agree

Installer

6. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Click Next.

 Select the disk group in which the cluster group resides. Click Next.

 Expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Database and select SQL Server iDataAgent
 Click Next.

9. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

Cluster Type Selection Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server - Configuration Options C Configure the Physical node ○ Configure a <u>V</u>irtual server < Back Cancel Virtual Server Selection Select the virtual server you would like to configure Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster. 2003ClusterVMS -<<u>B</u>ack <u>N</u>ext> <u>C</u>ancel nstaller Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure. Common Technology Engine
Common Technology Engine
CommCell Console
CommCell Console
CommCell Console
CommCell Console
CommCell Modules
CommCell Console
CommCell Modules
CommCell Console
CommCe Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform reasons why it may be disabled. Disk Space (Req/Recommended) Installation Folder: 0 MB/ 0 MB Temporary on C: drive: 0 MB/ 0 MB Special Registry Keys In Use Installer Install Agents for Restore Only < Back Cancel X nstaller Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below. Configure firewall services This machine can open connection to CommServe on tunnel por C CommServe can open connection toward this mach C CommServe is reachable only through a prox Installer Cancel Next >

10. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

11. Specify the name of the Virtual Machine. Click Next.

12. Select the name of the Physical Machine from drop-down list. Click Next.

13. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

- 14. Type or **Browse** to specify the software installation path which must be located on local disk of your physical machine and then click **Next**.
 - Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
 - Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:
 - /:*?"<>|#

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

Installer					
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name					
CommServe Client Name					
CommServe Host Name [Enter a valid; fullyqualified,IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com]					
my-computer my-company.com					
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>				
Installer					
Communication In Setup will configure th	Nerface Name e communication paths.				
	Select a client name				
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe				
	audi mycompany.com				
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.				
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>				
Installer	X				
Installer Communication I Setup will configure th	nterface Name ne communication paths.				
Installer Communication II Setup will configure th	Nterface Name ne communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podeword				
Installer Communication I Setup will configure th	terface Name re communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podsware Select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe				
Installer Communication In Setup will corfigure ti	Anterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podewari Select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe podewari mycompany.com				
Installer Communication In Setup will configure th	Atterface Name ne communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podewori Select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe godawari.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host.				
Installer	Atterface Name re communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podewari Select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe godavari.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. <				
Installer	Atterface Name re communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podewari select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe godawari.mpcompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. <				
Installer Communication In Setup will configure th Installer Installer	Atterface Name re communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podewari Select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe godavari.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. <				
Installer Communication In Setup will configure th Installer Installer Windows Firewall Allow programs to cor Firewall					
Installer Communication In Setup will configure th Setup will configure th Installer Mindows Firewall Allow programs to con Firewall	Iterface Name re communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine podewari select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe podewari mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. IP Address(es) for the selected host. Exclusion List municate through Windows Is DN				
Installer Communication In Setup will configure th Setup will configure th Installer Installer Windows Firewall Allow programs to cor Firewall Windows Firewall Windows Firewall Windows Firewall					
Installer Communication In Setup will configure th Setup will configure th Installer Installer Windows Firewal Allow programs to cor Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal I vou plan on usi exclusion list.	te communication paths. Select a client name for physical machine oddowai mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows Is ON a to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ng Windows Firewall & is recommended to add the software programs to the				
Installer Communication In Setup will configure th Setup will configure th Installer Installer Windows Firewall Allow programs to cor Firewall Windows Firewall Windows Firewall If Add programs If you plan on usi exclusion list Installer	te communication paths. Select a clerit name for physical machine oddstail Select an interface name for physical machine to communicate with the CommServe godavari mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Exclusion List municate through Windows Is ON a to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ng Windows Firewall Exclusion List				

15. Verify the default location for Job Results Path. Click **Browse** to change the default location. Click **Next**.

16. Select a Client Group from the list. Click **Next**.

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

17. Click Next.

18.	Click	Next.

Installer	X
Destination Folde Select the destinatio	PF Folder to install the program files.
Click Next to acce	pt the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
Destination Folde	87
C:\Program Files	Browse
Drive List	Space Required / Recommended
C: 928 MB	1394 MB / 1670 MB
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	×
Job Results Path Select the location o Results files for this o	n a shared drive to store Job Jient computer.
Click Next to acc	ept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
Job Results Pat	h
ogram Files\na	3%DataAgen/MobResults Browse
- Drive List	Space Required / Recommended
M: 15061 ME	50 MB / 50 MB
Installer	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel
Installer Client Come Sole	X
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group	Action for the client.
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The whic Sche	Ection for the client. Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines In have the same associations at various levels like skule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The whic Schr	Ection for the client.
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The which Schu	Client Group: None Selected
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The whic Sche	Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines In have the same associations at various levels like source Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports.
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The whic Schu	Ection for the client. Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines h have the same associations at various levels like solule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group White Schr Installer	Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines In have the same associations at various levels like due Policy. Actively Control. Security and Reports. Client group: Nore Selected client_group < Back Next> Cancel
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group which Schr Installer	Client Group: C
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group which Schw Installer	Ction for the client. Client Group: is a logical grouping of client machines h have the same associations at various levels like schule Policy. Activity Control. Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The which Schur Installer Installer Schur Installer Chocse when you w downloaded updated	
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group White Sche Installer Installer Schedule Install Choose when you w downloaded lond	
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The which Schr Installer Installer Installer Installer Choose when you w downloaded updates IV Schedule Install	
Installer Client Group Self Select a client group The which Schreiter Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install Choose when you we downloaded updated Schedule Install	
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The which School Choose when you we downloaded updated Choose when you we downloaded updated Schedule Install Choose when you we downloaded updated Weekly	
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The whic Sche Installer Installer Schedule Install Choose when you w downloaded updates Schedule Install Choose when you w downloaded updates Schedule Install	
Installer Client Group Self Select a client group The whic Scher Installer Installer Schedule Install Choose when you w downloaded updates I' Schedule Install Choose when you w downloaded updates Veekly	Action for the client. Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines In have the same associations at various levels like shale Policy. Actively Control, Security and Reports. Client group: (Back Next> Cancel (Back Next> Cancel (all of Automatic Updates all of Automatic Updates Time: 08.31:12 PM (Monday) Tuesday (Wednesday) Thursday (Friday) Saturday
Installer Client Group Sele Select a client group The which Scher Installer Installer Schedule Install Choose when you w downloaded updater Conce Conce Conce Weekly	

19. Select a Storage Policy from the drop-down list. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 29.

20. Click Next.

For cluster, you need to discover instances manually. See Manually Discovering New Instances to discover the new instances.

Installer	
Select Global Filter (Options
Select the Global Filter Op	ations for the Agent.
Global Filters provides the	e ability to set exclusions within a CommCell to filter out data from data
protection operations on	all agents or a cettain type.
G	Use Cell level policy
-	Always use Global Eiltere
0	Do not use Global Filters
Installer –	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	×
Storage Policy Sele	ction
- Salaat a dhuunn F (-	r the default autolizer to be
backed up.	I THE GROUN SUDUIDING DO
Configure for Lapt	op or Desktop Backup
Select a storage p	inlice from the pull-down list
ocieci a storaye p	and the second
	nassigned 🔽
Installer –	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Installer Storogo Doligu Solo	etien.
Installer Storage Policy Selec	ction
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up	Ction of the default subclient to be
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up.	Ction of the default subclient to be
Installer Storage Policy Seler Select a storage policy for backed up.	ction If the default subclient to be Op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up.	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up.	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up.	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up.	ction If the default subclient to be ap or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up.	Ction w the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt	Ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt	Ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt	Ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup Cancel
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer	Crtion If the default subclient to be Op or Desktop Backup Cancel
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Installer	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer	ction If the default subclient to be Op or Desktop Backup
Installer Solect a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Sole Auto Discovery op Select auto discovery op	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Installer SOL Auto Discovery op	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup Cencel Cancel Option
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Sol Auto Discovery Select auto discovery op	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup Cancel Cancel Option Next > Cancel
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Installer SoL Auto Discovery op Select auto discovery op	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup < Back Next > Cancel Option Non for SQL
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Installer Sol. Auto Discovery Select auto discovery of Auto discovery	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup < Back
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Installer SolL Auto Discovery op Select auto discovery op	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup A Back Next > Cancel Option tion for SQL ver instances
Installer Solect a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Solect auto discovery op Select auto discovery op	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup
Installer Solect a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer SolL Auto Discovery op Select auto discovery op Auto discovery op	ction t the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup Cancel Option Option SQL ver instances
Installer Solect a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Sol Auto Discovery Select auto discovery op Auto discovery	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup Cancel Option Option Ver instances
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Installer SOL Auto Discovery Select auto discovery op Auto discovery	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup Cancel Cancel Option Next > Cancel Ver instances
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Installer Sol Auto Discovery op Select auto discovery op Auto discov	ction r the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup < Back Next > Cancel Option Next ret instances
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy of backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer SOL Auto Discovery Select auto discovery op	ction If the default subclient to be op or Desktop Backup Cancel Cancel Option Non for SQL ver instances
Installer Storage Policy Select Select a storage policy for backed up. Configure for Lapt Installer Solt Auto Discovery Select auto discovery op Auto discov Installer Inst	ction If the default subclient to be app or Desktop Backup Cancel Coption Hom for SQL Ver instances

22. Click Yes.

23. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click **Next**.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.
- 24. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.



Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.

< Back Next >

~

Cancel

Summary Summary of install selections

Installer

Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = myccomputer.myccompany.com Interface Name = audi.myccompany.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy

25. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click Advanced Settings to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

26. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

27. Click Next.

28. Click Finish.

You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
Client Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2
Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0
Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec
Advanced Settings
Image: Second
nstaller 🛛 🔀
Results Remote install results
Summary of remote install The following coffware (Varion) users calested to be installed
REAL2: Install succeeded.
۲ ۲
[Finish]
netaller 🛛
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder
Please note:
Tou still need to create a Job Schedule for each IU arangent that has been installed on this client computer.
You that need to break a use schedule rot each usag-gent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations.
To ut this release to create a use a consultance of each upda-gent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
To util the de to create a use schedule for each usas-gent that has been installed on this clent computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface. Installer
Up that left to be the a void schedule not each µ vida-gent that has been initialied on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface. Installer Next>
To utilit meet to create a use schedule rot each usads-gent that has been initialied on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete
To ut that need to cheate a use a consider of each usagement that has been initialed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the DataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete SetUware installation completed successfully. Viai the website below to download letest Updates and Service Packs.
Installer Software installation completed successfully. Via the website below to download lates Updates and Service Packs. Elick Finish to complete Setup.
Software installation completed successfully. Software installation completed successfully. Installer Inst



If you already have a storage policy selected in step 19, Click Next \succ button available at the bottom of the page to continue.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

29 To create a storage policy, you must have configured a library in the CommCell.

- If you do not already have a library configured, go to Disk Library Creation.
- If you have a library configured, go to Storage Policy Creation.

DISK LIBRARY CREATION:

- From the CommCell Console, click the Backup Target button on EZ Operations Wizard.
- 2. Click Disc Library (For backup to disc) and click Next.
- 3. Click Use Local Disk.

Type the name of the folder in which the disc library must be located in the **Enter backup destination folder** box or click the **Browse** button to select the folder.

Click Next.

If you click the **Use Network Share** option you will be prompted for the credentials (user name and password) to access the share.

- 4. Click Next.
- 5. Click Finish.

This will create a library and Storage Policy. Click the Next > button available at the bottom of the page to continue.

STORAGE POLICY CREATION

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- Select **Yes** to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

This will create a storage policy. Click the Next > button available at the bottom of the page to continue.





Previous Next >

Getting Started Deployment On A Non-Microsoft Cluster - SQL Server *i*DataAgent

< Previous Next >

SKIP THIS PAGE IF YOU ARE NOT INSTALLING THIS AGENT ON A NON-MICROSOFT CLUSTER.

Click Next > to begin Configuration.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed in one for the following Non-Microsoft Clustered environment:

INSTALL SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT IN VERITAS CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT

Use this procedure to install the software from the installation package or a network drive on a VERITAS Cluster environment.

INSTALL SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT IN HP SCALABLE NAS/POLYSERVE CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT

Use this procedure to install the software from the installation package or a network drive on a NAS/Polyserve Clustered environment.

INSTALL SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT IN VERITAS CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT

WHERE TO INSTALL

Install the software in a VERITAS Clustered Environment, by locating the active node that is hosting the cluster resources and perform the installation from this node to the virtual node.

Follow the steps given below to install the SQL File System iDataAgent in a VERITAS Clustered environment

1. Create bIgnoreClusterVMCheck registry key to detect that the agent is being installed on a virtual node in a non-Microsoft cluster.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Download Software Packages

Verify System Requirements

1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)

Download the latest software package to perform the install.

Make sure that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY LOCAL MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the **SOFTWARE** and click **New** -> **Key**.
- 4. Name the key as **GalaxyInstallerFlags**.
- Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as blgnoreClusterVMCheck and by double clicking the blgnoreClusterVMCheck key modify the Value data to 1.

Select the language you will use during installation		
English (United States)		
	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.

Select the required language.
 Click Next.

4.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which

Select the option to install software on this computer.

the software is being installed.

5. Click Next.

- 6. Click OK.
- Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

8. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Click Next.

Install Software on this computer
View documentation website
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
 Install Auble Actional Tradet Exit
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software
This monram will install Software on your computer
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setur program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.
Installer
Next> Cancel
OK
Installer
License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
Software Release 9.0.0
(including Microsoft@ SQL Server ¹¹² 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server ¹¹² 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
I accept the terms in the license agreement.
C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement. Installer
< Back Next> Cancel
Installer
Cluster Type Selection Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server
Configuration Options
C Configure the <u>r</u> hysical node
< BackCancel

- 9. In the **disk groups** box, specify the host name of the Virtual Host created for backup, e.g., VirtualVeritasServe.
 - In the **Communication Interface Name** box, specify the fully qualified domain name of the Virtual Host, e.g., VirtualVeritasServe.acme.com.

User Guide - SQL Server iDataAgent

• Click Next.

10. Specify the hosts node in the Preferred Nodes and click Add to add in the Nodes on which Virtual Group is configured to run.

Specify the name of active node in **Current Owner Node** box. Click Next.

Select the virtual serv setup	er for which you w	ould like to run		
	Choose from the configured on thi	following list of di s cluster.	sk groups	
	Communication I	nterface Name:		
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel
referred Nodes Provide list of prefere Group. Preferred Nodes:	d nodes for selecte	Add Remove	Nodes on which Vi configured to run. VRSCLUSTER1 VRSCLUSTER2	tual Group is
Provide list of prefere Group. Preferred Nodes:	d nodes for selecte	d Virtual Add Remove	Nodes on which Vir configured to run VRSCLUSTER1 VRSCLUSTER2	tual Group is
Provide list of prefere Group.	d nodes for selecte	d Vitual Add Remove KBack	Nodes on which Vir configured to run. VRSCLUSTERT VRSCLUSTER2	tual Group is

Is node vrscluster1 current owner of virtual machine SQLDisk

Yes

Installer

Select Platforms

E C Tools

Installer

Select the platforms you want to configure.

Common Technology Engine
 CommCel CommServe Modules
 CommCel Console
 Mediadgent Modules
 Contert Modules
 Contert Modules
 Contert Modules

Clent Modules
 Context Indexing and Search
 Context Indexing and Search
 Web Based Search & Browse
 Archive Management
 ContinuousDataReplicator
 SRM
 Supporting Modules
 Look

<u>N</u>o

tion of the plath why it may be

Special Registry Keys In Use

Disk Space (Req/Recommended) Installation Folder: 0 MB/ 0 MB Temporary on C: drive 0 MB/ 0 MB

- Click \boldsymbol{Yes} if it is the Active node. 11.
 - If you click $\ensuremath{\mathbf{No}}$ the program will perform the passive install. Follow the steps described in Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.
 - This screen may look different from the example shown.
- 12. Expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Database and then click SQL Server iDataAgent box.

Click Next.

13. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Configure}}$ firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

Install Agents for Restore Only	< Back	Next >	Cancel
Installer			×
Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services			
If there is a firewall between this machin	ne and the CommSer	ve, configure firewa	Il services below.
Configure firewall services			
Please specify how Windows Firewall connection from here to a CommServe CommServe are blocked, and setup s machine, or whether there is a Proxy in	is limiting network tra e's tunnel port, wheth hould instead expect n between.	iffic. Whether it is p ler all connections t CommServe to cor	ossible to open oward mect back to this
C This machine can open connection	i to CommServe on t	unnel port	
C CommServe can open connection t	oward this machine		
C CommServe is reachable only throu	gh a proxy		
Installer	[Next>	Cancel

14. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name. Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

15. Click Next.

16. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

17. Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

 Specify the Job Results Path. Make sure that the Job Results folder you specify resides on a shared disk.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

Installer		×		
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name				
CommServe Client Name				
l CommServe (Enter a val	Host Name id, fully-qualified, IF	⁹ host name; for example:		
mycompute	r. mycompany.com)			
mycomputer.mycompany.com				
Installer				
		< Back Next > Cancel		
Installer		×		
Communication In Setup will configure th	nterface Name ne communication) paths.		
	Select a client r	name		
	audi_cn	•		
	Select an interfa communicate w	ace name that this computer will use to ith the CommServe		
	audi.mycompar	iy.com		
	IP Address(es)	for the selected host.		
Installer				
		<pre></pre>		
Installer		X		
Windows Firewall Allow programs to cor Firewall	I Exclusion Lis nmunicate through	st Windows		
Windows Firewal	l is ON			
Add program	s to the Windows F	Firewall Exclusion List		
If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.				
Installer				
In isocalien		< Back Next > Cancel		
Installer		×		
Destination Folde Select the destination	r folder to install the	e program files.		
Click Next to accep	t the default locati	on, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.		
Destination Folde	Destination Folder			
C:\Program Files				
		Browse		
	1	Browse		
Drive List	.	Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1670 MB		
Drive List C: 928 MB	•	Browse Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1670 MB		
19.	Select a Client Group from the list.			
-----	--------------------------------------			
	Click Next.			

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

20. Click Next.

21. Click Next.

22.	Select a Storage Policy from the drop-down list.
	Click Next.

nstaller					X
Job Results Path Select the location or Results files for this c	n a shared drive to sto lient computer.	ire Job			
Click Next to acce	pt the default location	n, or click Brow	se to choose a	an alternate	location.
Job Results Path	1 3\iDataAgent\JobRe:	sults		B <u>r</u> owse.	
M: 15061 MB		_ Space H	50 MB / 50 I	MB	
nstaller		< <u>B</u> ack	Next	>	Cancel
Inetallor					
Client Group Sele Select a client group f	ction or the client.				
The C	Client Group is a logica	al grouping of c	lient machines		
which Sche	n have the same asso dule Policy, Activity C	iciations at vari iontrol, Security	ous levels like and Reports.		
	Client group:			_	
	client_group				
Installer		< Back	Next	>	Cancel
poto lon					
Schedule Install of Choose when you wa downloaded updates	of Automatic Upo ant to schedule an inst	lates tall of the			
Schedule Install of Choose when you wa downloaded updates	of Automatic Upo Int to schedule an insi	lates tall of the			×
Schedule Install o Choose when you we downloaded updates	of Automatic Upo Int to schedule an insi	lates tall of the tes			×
Schedule Install of Choose when you we downloaded updates	of Automatic Upo Int to schedule an insi all of Automatic Updat	dates tall of the tes	2 PM 🔶		×
Schedule Install of Choose when you we downloaded updates Schedule Inst C Once C Weekly	all of Automatic Upo In to schedule an inst all of Automatic Updat Time:	fates tall of the tes 08:31:1	2 PM ÷	sday	X
Schedule Install o Chocse when you we downloaded updates C Schedule Inst. C Droce C Weekly	of Automatic Upp Int to schedule an inst all of Automatic Updat Time:	tates tall of the tes 08:31:1 fonday √ednesday	2 PM 🔹 O Tues O Thur	:day sday	X
Schedule Install of Choose when you we downloaded updates IF Schedule Inst. © Once © Weekly	of Automatic Upp int to schedule an inst all of Automatic Updat Time:	lates tall of the tes DB:31:1 fonday Vednesday iriday	2 PM ÷ C Tue: C Thur C Satu	:day sday rday	X
Schedule Install d Choose when you we downloaded updates Schedule Insta Conce Weekly Installer	of Automatic Upd In to schedule an inst all of Automatic Updat Time:	lates tall of the les 08:31:1 Aonday Vednesday Tiday	2 PM ↑ Tues ↑ Thur ↑ Satu	sday sday rday	
Schedule Install (Choore when you we downloaded updates Schedule Inst. Once Weekly Installer	of Automatic Upp int to schedule an inst all of Automatic Updat Time:	lates tall of the les 08:31:1 fonday Vednesday tiiday tiunday < Back	2 PM 🛨 C Tuer C Thur C Satu	:day sday rday ≻	Cancel
Schedule Install (Choore when you we downloaded updates Schedule Inst.) Conce Weekly Installer	of Automatic Update in instantion of Automatic Update in the schedule an instantion of Automatic Update in the schedule and instantiation of the schedule and sch	lates tal of the les (06:31:1 fonday v/ednesday iniday iunday < Back	2 PM 🔹 C Tuer C Thur C Satu Next	rday sday rday ≻	Cancel
Schedule Install C Schedule Install (Schedule Install (Schedule Installer) Schedule Installer Installer Installer Select Global Filt Select the Global Filt	of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat Time:	tates D8:31:1 fonday Vednesday iriday iunday < Back	2 PM C Tues C Thus C Satu Next	day sday ≻	Cancel
Schedule Install (Choore when you we downloaded updates Conce	of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat Time:	tates lates les (08:31:1 Aonday v/ednesday iumday kunday k	2 PM ± C Tuer C Thur C Satu Next	iday siday > > - 	Cancel
Schedule Install G Choose when you we downloaded updates Conce Weekly Installer Installer Select Global Filters Global Filters provide protection operation	of Automatic Updat In to schedule an inst all of Automatic Updat Time: Image: Ima	tates Itali of the Ites DB:31:1 Aonday Vednesday inday < Back Ant. Lusions within than type. Solicy	2 PM 🛨 C Tues C Thur C Satu Next	iday daga ≥	Cancel Ita from data
Schedule Install G Choose when you we downloaded updates Conce Weekly Installer Installer Select Global Filt Select He Global Filt Select He Global Filt	of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat Time:	hates lates les les les les les les les les states verdnesday verdnesday verdnesday verdnesday inday verdnesday inday verdnesday inday inday verdnesday inday verdnesday inday verdnesday inday verdnesday inday verdnesday inday verdnesday inday verdnesday	2 PM 🛨 C Tues C Thur C Satu Next	iday aday >	Cancel Ita from data
Schedule Install G Choce when you we downloaded updates C Schedule Inst. C Once Weekly Installer Installer Select Global Filt Select the Global Filt Select the Global Filt	If Automatic Updaten instruction of a construction of a constructi	hates les 08:31:1 fonday vednesday iiday «Back nt. curday aunday aunday bids Filters bal Filters	2 PM 🚊 C Tues C Thur C Satu	.day sday ≻	Cancel ta from data
Schedule Install G Choose when you we downloaded updates Schedule Inst. Conce Weekly Installer Select Global Filt Select the Global Filt Solect The Global Filt Solect on operation	of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat Time:	tates tal of the les [08:31:1 fonday vednesday itun	2 PM 🔔	iday saday ≻	Cancel
Schedule Install (Choore when you we downloaded updates Conce	of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat all of Automatic Updat Time: • N • V • F • S • Options or Options or Options for the Age • Use Cell level p • Always use Glo • Do not use Glot	tates tal of the les les les les les les les les les le	2 PM 🛨	day aday >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	Cancel Cancel Cancel

23. Click Next.

This process will not automatically discover the Virtual nodes. It is recommended to configure the Virtual node post installation from CommCell Console. For details, see Virtual Nodes Are Not Being Automatically Discovered in a Veritas Cluster Environment

24. Click Next.

25. Click **OK** and manually configure the cluster resources.

See Configuring the VERITAS Cluster Resources for more information on configuring the cluster resources.

26. Click Next.

Installer
Storage Policy Selection
Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
Unassigned 💌
Installer < Back Next > Cancel
Installer X
Select auto discovery option for SQL
✓ Auto discover instances
Installer < Back Next> Cancel
Installer 🛛 🔀
Summary Summary of install selections
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = auG.mycompany.com Client = auG.mycompany.com Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobBreuits GibdaFilmes = Lab Cell Perd Policy
Installer Cancel
Tostalley
To complete the initial configure software cluster resources manually. Please follow the guidelines in the documentation. OK
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
Installer

27. Click Finish.

Coftuero installa	tion completed successfully		
Visit the website	below to download latest Updates an	d Service Packs.	-
Click Finish to c	mplete Setup.		
			-

CONFIGURING VERITAS CLUSTER RESOURCES

In case of VERITAS Cluster you must manually install the software on all the available Nodes. For installs on the VERITAS Cluster, complete the following procedures for the agent. These procedures can be completed using the VERITAS Cluster Administrator.

CREATE THE CLUSTER RESOURCES FOR SERVICES

Create Service Dependencies

Associate Services with the Current Active Node

28. Once the physical nodes and the virtual machine are installed, services should be added as generic services.

Also, you may want to designate the services as "critical" if you want to cause the virtual machine to fail over if the associated service stops.

 In Windows Services, locate the services for each installed cluster (e.g., Bull Calypso Cluster Plugin (penodevn1_netwo) (instance001)) right-click and select
 Properties, and locate the service name in the General tab (e.g., GxClusPlugin (penodevn1_netwo) (Instance001))

The service name is case- and space-sensitive, so record it exactly as it appears.

- In Cluster Administrator, navigate to the appropriate Cluster group. Create a generic service resource for the cluster plugin service.
- If you want an automatic failover to occur, mark the resource as **Critical** and **Enabled**.
- Repeat this procedure for each client installed on the cluster.
- In Cluster Administrator, click Resources.
- Click Link and make the Cluster plugin resource dependent upon the MountV resource and the Lanman service.
- In Cluster Administrator, navigate to the appropriate **GenericService** group.
- Right-click the cluster plugin resource.
- From the short-cut menu, click **Online** and the name of the current active node.

INSTALL SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT IN HP SCALABLE NAS/POLYSERVE CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT

WHERE TO INSTALL

29.

30.

Install the software in HP Scalable NAS/Polyserve Cluster environment from the active host to virtual server.

The software must be installed on each passive node available to the virtual host. During install, you will be asked to provide the name of the active host for each passive host installation. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.

Follow the steps given below to install the Windows File System iDataAgent in a HP Scalalable NAS/Polyserve Clustered environment:

- 1. Create bIgnoreClusterVMCheck registry key to detect that the agent is being installed on a virtual node in a non-Microsoft cluster.
- To create the registry key, see the following steps:
- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- 2. Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the **SOFTWARE** and click **New** -> **Key**.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -

2.

3.

> DWORD value, name it as bIgnoreClusterVMCheck and by double clicking the bIgnoreClusterVMCheck key modify the Value data to 1.

- In the PolyServe Matrix Server, create a virtual host resource name that has an assigned TCP/IP address in the network.
 - Provide a virtual host name (e.g., VirtualPolyServe.acme.com) and an Application name (e.g., VirtualPolyServe).
 - Select all network Interfaces that will be available as hosts for the backup software services and click OK.
- From the Virtual Hosts tab in the PolyServe Matrix Server dialog box, locate the primary node for the virtual server you are installing, and perform the installation from the active (primary) host to the virtual server.
- 4. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- Select the required language.
 Click Next.

	Select the language	e you will use d ited States)	luring installatio	n.	
				Nevt >	Cancel
				<u>IN</u> BAC 2	Lance
=	nstall Software of	n this compu	uter		
= /	Advanced options	3			
	View documenta	tion website			
	 View Install Quic Install Adobe Act 	k Start Guide (robat Reader	Requires Adob	e Acrobat Reader)	
					🖨 Exit
Installe	n				⇔ Exit
Installe Welcor The In setup p	r r ne staller will guide you th rocess for Software	nrough the			🖨 Exit
<mark>Installe</mark> Weicor The In setup p	ne staller will guide you th rocess for Software This program will inst	rrough the all Software or	vour computer		⇔ Exit
Installe Welco The In setup p	rr ne tracess for Software This program will inst It is strongly recomme	nrough the all Software or ended that you	uyour computer exit all Window	s programs before ru	
Installe Welcon The In setup p	r ne stalier will guide you th cocess for Software This program will inst It is strongly recomm Setup program. Dick Cancel to quit S	wough the all Software or anded that you Setup and them 1 Setup.	i your computer exit all Window close any prog	s programs before ru rams you have runn	Exit
Installe Welcon The In setup p	The staller will guide you th roccess for Software This program will inst It is stongly recomm Setup program. Click Cancel to guit Next to continue with WARNING: This pro	rough the all Software or ended that you Setup and then Setup gram is protect	i your computer exit all Window close any prog	s programs before runn rams you have runn law and internations	Exit
Installe Welcou The In setup p	The staller will guide you th cocess for Software This program will inst R is strongly recomme Setup program. Cick Cancel to quit S Next to continue with WARNING: This pro Unauthorized reproduces extent possible unde	wough the all Software or anded that you Setup and then Setup. gram is protect uction or distrib and criminal per the law.	your computer exit all Window close any prog ed by copyright ution of this pro rubies, and will	Is programs before runn rams you have runn law and internations gram, or any potion be prosecuted to th	Exit
Installe Welcou The In setup p	The stater will guide you the stater will guide you the tracess for Software. This program will inst this strongly recommon Setup program. Click Cancel to quit S WARNING: This pro Unauthorized reproduct result in severe civil a extent possible under the state the severe civil a severe civil	all Software or anded that you Setup and then Setup. gram is protect uction or distinand criminal per the law.	your computer exit all Window close any prog ed by copyright ution of this pro realities, and will	, s programs before ru rams you have runn law and internationu gram, or any portion be prosecuted to th	Exit
Installe Welcon The In setup p	The staller will guide you the staller will guide you the socies for Software This program. Will inst the strongly recommendation of the state of th	wough the all Software or anded that you Setup and them Setup. gram is protect uction or distribution and criminal per the law.	your computer exit all Window close any prog ed by copyright ution of this pro	s programs before runn rams you have runn law and internation gram, or any portion be prosecuted to th Next >	Exit unning this ing. Click al treaties. of it, may e maximum Cancel
Installer	The staller will guide you it staller will guide you it is stored to software This program will inst is stored you will you will set up program. Click Cancel to quit Next to continue with WARNING: This pro Unauthorized reprovid extent possible unde	rough the all Software or ended that you Setup and then Setup. gram is protect uction or distrib and criminal per the law.	I your computer exit all Window close any prog ed by copyright ution of this pro naties, and will	s programs before runn rams you have runn law and internations gram, or any portion be prosecuted to th Next >	Exit Inning this ing. Click al treaties. of it, may e maximum Cancel
Installer	The analysis of the second sec	wough the all Software or anded that you Setup and then Setup. gram is protect uction or distrib and criminal protect the law.	your computer exit all Window close any prog ed by copyright ution of this pro- nables, and will ny and all virus h this Software a subsequent	s programs before run rams you have runn law and internationu gram, or any portion be prosecuted to th Next >	Exit Inning this Inc. Click It reaties. of it, may may Cancel of disabled of disabled
Installe Welcon The In setup p Installe	This program will inst stater will guide you th traccess for Software This program will inst Setup program. Dick Cancel to guid S McARNING: This pro Unauthorized reprod result in severe civil a extent possible unde the setup possible unde	wough the all Software or ended that you Setup and then Setup. gram is protect uction or distrib and criminal weitien or distrib and criminal weitien or distrib and criminal weitien or distribution and criminal weitien or distribution and criminal weitien or distribution and the setup.	your computer exit all Window close any prog ed by copyright ution of this pro values, and will in this pottware nd subsequent them and setu	s programs before ru rams you have runn law and internation; gram, or any portion be prosecuted to th Next > Next > scanning software b installation. Failure to failure for setup to in failure for setup to in p will continue.	e disabled discover files.

6. Select the option to install software on this computer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

7. Click Next.

8. Click OK.

9. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next. 10. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Click Next.

- **11.** In the **disk groups** box, specify the host name of the Virtual Host created for backup, e.g., VirtualVeritasServe.
 - In the **Communication Interface Name** box, specify the fully qualified domain name of the Virtual Host, e.g., VirtualVeritasServe.acme.com.
 - Click Next.

12. Specify the hosts node in the **Preferred Nodes** and click **Add** to add in the Nodes on which **Virtual Group is configured to run**.

Specify the name of active node in **Current Owner Node** box. Click **Next**.

13. Click **Yes** if it is the Active node.

- If you click **No** the program will perform the passive install. Follow the steps described in Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.
- This screen may look different from the example shown.
- 14. Expand Client Modules | Database and then click SQL Server *i*DataAgent box. Click Next.

Yes

<u>N</u>o

	Installer 🛛 🕅
	Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.
	Common Technology Engine Common Technology Common Technology
If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next .	Installer 🛛 🔀
For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.	Configure firewall services
If firewall configuration is not required, click Next .	If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.
	Please specify how Windows Fixewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open connection from here to a Commercive's turnel port, whether all connections toward Lomipieve are blocked, and istup and/all inteled aspect Commercive to connect back to this machine, or whether there is a Frow in between. © This machine can open connection to Commerce on turnel port. © Commerce can open connection toward this machine.
	C CommServe is reachable only through a proxy Installer Next > Cancel
Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name . Click Next .	Installer CommServe Name Specily the CommServe computer name and host
Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:	name CommServe Client Name
\ `~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"	CommServe Host Name [Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com] mycomputer.mycompany.com
	Installer < Back Cancel
Click Next . The client name should be equivalent to the vhost name and the interface name equals the vhosts fully qualified domain name.	Installer Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
	Select a client name
	Installer
Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List , to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.	

16. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**. Click Next.

17. Click Next.

15.

Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add 18. programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

19.

20.

21.

	Installer
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	IV Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer < Back Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Destination Folder Extended for Browse Browse
/: *? < > #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Image: Space Required / Recommended 1334 MB / 1670 MB 1374 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer Kext > Cancel
Specify the Job Results Path . Make sure that the Job Results folder you specify resides on a shared disk.	Installer Job Results Path
Click Browse to change the default location.	Select the location on a shared drive to store Job Results files for this client computer.
Click Next. Select a Client Group from the list. Click Next	Click Next to accept the default location, or click. Browse to choose an alternate location. Job Results Path Onem Files/IndSkill@indsgen/ViddResult# Drive List M: 15061 MB Installer Installer Installer Client Group Selection
	Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Actively Control. Security and Reports. Client group: Nore Selected client_group Installer

22. Click Next. X

23. Click Next.

24. Select a Storage Policy from the drop-down list. Click Next.

25. Click Next.

 $\ensuremath{\textbf{Auto Discover Instances}}$ are automatically discovered for every 24 hours.

Installer				
Schedule Install of Automatic Updates				
Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.				
Schedule Install of Auti	omatic Updates			
C Once				
6 M. H	Time: 08:31:12 PM +			
·• Weekly	Monday C Tuesday			
	C Wednesday C Thursday			
	C Evideu C Sabadau			
	C Suntu			
la della c	 Sunday 			
Installer	(Back Next) Cancel			
Installer	×			
Select Global Filter Opti Select the Global Filter Option	ions s for the Agent			
Select the chobar filter option	a tor the Agent.			
Global Filters provides the ab protection operations on all a	ility to set exclusions within a CommCell to filter out data from data gents of a certain type.			
€ U:	se Cell level policy			
C Al	ways use Global Filters			
C Do	o not use Global Filters			
Installer				
maxanor	< Back Next> Cancel			
bastallas.				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio	n			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio	n			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	n t default subclient to be			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up.	Adfault subclient to be			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or	n o default subclient to be Desktop Backup			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or	N edefault subclient to be			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy	a default subclient to be Desktop Backup (from the puli-down list.			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unass				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unass	n e default subclient to be Desktop Backup / from the pulidown list.			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unass	n Desktop Backup //rom the puli-down list.			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unase	Desktop Backup (from the pull-down list.			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unast	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup / from the pull-down list.			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unast Installer Installer	n edefault subclient to be Desktop Backup rfrom the pull-down list.			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unast Installer Installer				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unass Installer Installer	default subclient to be Desktop Backup rfrom the pull-down list. Iggned < Back Next> Cancel			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unass Installer Installer Installer	n b default subclient to be Desktop Backup (from the pull down list. spined < Back Next > Cancel			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unass Installer Installer SQL Auto Discovery On	n b default subclient to be Desktop Backup (from the pull-down list. spred <back next=""> Cancel from</back>			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unass Installer Installer SQL Auto Discovery Op Select asto discovery oplion	n b default subclient to be Desktop Backup (from the pull-down list. spred < Back Next > Cancel tion for SQL			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unstaller Installer SQL Auto Discovery Option				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unast Installer Installer SQL Auto Discovery Op Select auto discovery option				
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Unstaller Installer Installer SOL Auto Discovery Op Select auto discovery opion	n default subclient to be Desktop Backup //rom the pull-down list. ispred (Back Next > Cancel tion			
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer SOL Auto Discovery Option Select auto discover in Auto discover in				
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer Sol. Auto Discovery Option Select auto discover in Auto discover in	n e default subclient to be Desktop Backup rfrom the pull-down list. Signed Cancel Concel Ston for SQL stances			
Installer Storage Policy Selectio Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer SOL Auto Discovery Opion Select auto discovery opion Auto discover in	In default subclient to be Desktop Backup rfrom the pull-down list. spred Cancel tion for SQL stances			
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Sol. Auto Discovery Op Select auto discovery option Auto discover in				
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Auto Discovery Op Select auto discover in Auto discover in				
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer Sol. Auto Discovery Op Select auto discover in Auto discover in				
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer Installer SOL Auto Discovery Op Select auto discover in Auto discover in	In default subclient to be Desktop Backup / from the pull-down list. ispred < Back Next > Cancel fon for SQL natances			
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Installer SOL Auto Discovery Op Select auto discover in Auto discover in	I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I			
Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the backed up. Configure for Laptop or Select a storage policy Installer Solt Auto Discovery Op Select auto discover in Installer Installer	n s default subclient to be Desktop Backup from the pull-down list. signed < Back Next > Cancel tion for SQL stences			

26. Click Next.

		Installer
		Summary Summary of install selections
		Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
		Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mpcomputer mpcompany.com Interface Name = audi mpcompany.com Dent = audi mpcompany.com Jub Results Path = C:\Program Files\JubResults Biblab Filers = Use Cell level policy Installer Association (Section 1997) Cancel
27.	Click OK and manually configure the cluster resources.	Installer
	See Configuring the HP Scalable NAS/Polyserve Cluster Resources for more information on configuring the cluster resources.	To complete the install configure software cluster resources manually. Please follow the guidelines in the documentation.
		OK
28	Click Navt	
20.		Installer C Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder
		Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this clear computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
		Installer
29.	Click Finish .	Installer
		Completion Report Setup complete
		Software installation completed successfully. Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs. Dlick Finish to complete Setup.
		Installer Technical Support Website

CONFIGURING HP SCALABLE NAS/POLYSERVE CLUSTER RESOURCES

For installs on the HP Scalable NAS/PolyServe Cluster, complete the following procedures for the agent.

30. Create and Use Scripts to Administer Virtual Machine Services.

You should create and use three scripts to administer virtual machine services:

- Probe script is used to reveal the state of the specified services. This is done using the GxSCMCmd.exe utility.
- Start script is used to start services.
- Stop script is used to stop services.

Create a probe script to have the status of both the Bull Calypso Communications Service (GxCVD) and the Bull Calypso Event Manager Service (GxEvMgrC) checked.

In the probe script, include the ${\tt GxSCMCmd.exe}$ utility by name in the appropriate command. (This utility is available from the Resource Pack. See Tools and Utilities for more information.)

X

X

A

-

Create a folder (e.g., ${\tt m:\GxSCMCmd})$ on a shared disk that the virtual host you created has access to.

Copy the $\tt GxSCMCmd.exe$ utility and the script files you created (probe.bat, start.bat, stop.bat) to this folder.

The utility will return the state of the specified services: '0' if the services are running or '1' if services are stopped. For an error condition, '-1' is returned.

Note that the service name includes the name of the client and the name of the instance. To avoid error in providing the vhost name and instance name in the path of scripts, copy the key name from here: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\GXClusPlugIn (vhostname) (Instance00x)

These examples provide sample script names, locations and virtual host name as suggested names not requirements.

The command syntax is:

GxSCMCmd.exe -IsRunning <list of service name>

For example, your probe script (e.g., $\texttt{m:\GxSCMCmd\gxprobe.bat})$ may appear as follows:

@echo off

if'%MX_ACTIVE_STATE%'='INACTIVE' exit 0

m:\GxSCMCmd\GxSCMCmd.exe -IsRunning "GxClusPlugIn (virtualpolyserve)
(Instance001)"

if ERRORLEVEL 0 exit 0

exit 1

Be sure to copy the GxSCMCmd.exe utility to the shared disk resource. Also, be sure to include the probe script on the shared disk.

The stop and start scripts must also contain the registry entry for the virtual machine service names. Your start script (e.g., m:\GxSCMCmd\gxstart.bat) may appear as follows:

@echo off

C:\WINDOWS\system32\net.exe start "GxClusPlugIn (virtualpolyserve) (Instance001)"

exit O

Your stop script (e.g., m:\GxSCMCmd\gxstart.bat) may appear as follows: @echo off

C:\WINDOWS\system32\net.exe stop GxClusPlugIn (virtualpolyserve)
(Instance001)

exit 0

To add the custom service monitor to the virtual host configuration in the PolyServe Matrix Server console.

- 1. Ensure that the virtual host name <virtualpolyserve> is online.
- From the Services MMC snap-in, verify or manually start the cluster plugin service, "Bull Calypso Cluster Plugin (virtualpolyserve) (Instance00x)", on the active primary node for the Vhost virtualpolyserve
- 3. From the PolyServe Matrix Server, click the Virtual Hosts tab.
- Right click Virtual Host <virtualpolyserve> and then Add Service Monitor.
- 5. For the **Monitor Type** field in the Add Service Monitor dialog box, click **CUSTOM**.
- 6. Assign a name to the service monitor by typing the name in the **Name** field.
- 7. In the **User probe script** field, type the path to the probe script that calls the GxSCMCmd.exe command (on the share disk)

8. Click Advanced.

- 9. From the Advanced Service Configuration dialog box, click the **Scripts** tab.
- 10. In the **Script pathname: Start** field, type the path to the start script (shared disk). In the corresponding **Timeout (seconds)** field, type a timeout value greater than 60 seconds.

31. Add the Customer Service Monitor

- 11. In the **Script pathname: Stop** field, type the path to the stop script (shared disk). In the corresponding **Timeout (seconds)** field, type a timeout value greater than 60 seconds.
- 12. Click **OK** once, then again.

The monitor should now start, and the primary node should now be active. Failover will occur if services are disabled on the primary node, and services in such a case will move to a secondary node.

Previous Next >

Getting Started Configuration - SQL Server iDataAgent

Once installed, configure a subclient and associate a storage policy as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
 - Right-click the default subclient and then click Properties.
- 2. • Click the Content tab.

1.

• Click Configure.

3. Click Discover.



OK Cancel Discover

Change all selected databases to:

t01 > 🚺 Client

Backup List Media

Backup History Schedules Operation W

4. • Hold down CTRL and click each database listed in the Database Name list.

> Ensure you have at least one user-created database selected as depicted in the image on the right.

- In the Change all selected databases to list, click default.
- Click OK.

Help

< Previous Next >

> DA SQL Server > 🕅

Client Co... Agent Type Subclient Job Type

- 5.
- Click the **Storage Device** tab.
- In the **Storage Policy** box, select a Storage Policy name.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, follow the step given in step 7 below to create a storage policy.

- 6
- Click the Log Storage Policy tab.
- In the **Storage Policy** box, select a Storage Policy name.

• Click OK.

Click Next > to continue.

Database Configuration	
Database Name	Subclient Name 🛛 🕹
Payroll	payroll
Resources	default
Resources_1	default
Staff_Master User-created	default
Student_Master database	default
master	default
model	default
model_test	default
msdb	default
msdb_test	default
Change all selected databases to:	-
defa	ault 🕥
	Not Backup
Subclient Properties of default	
General Content P	actus Rules Pro/Doct Process
1 Storage Device Activity Control	Encryption Security SQL Settings
Data Storage Policy	ata Transfer Option Deduction
2	vaca transfer Option Decuplication
Storage Policy:	
	Data Paths
SP	
Incremental Storage Policy:	
Create Storage Policy	
Number of streams for data backup:	2 4
	OK Cancel Help
Subclient Properties of default	
General Content B Storage Device Activity Control	ackup Rules Pre/Post Process Encryption Security SQL Settings
Data Storage Policy Log Storage Policy	Data Transfer Option Deduplication
Storage Policy:	`
ca dedupe	
Number or streams for data backup:	4 -

7. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the **Storage Policies** and then click **New Storage Policy**.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options

are mentioned below:

- Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
- $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ\;$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.



Previous Next >

Getting Started Backup - SQL Server iDataAgent

WHAT GETS BACKED UP	WHAT DOES NOT GET BACKED UP
SQL Server system databases, which includes	tempdb - as SQL Server re-creates tempdb every time the server is started, it is not included in the backup
master, msdb, and model	SQL analysis server database
SQL Server user databases	Databases on removable media
SQL Server Filestream Databases using regular and IntelliSnap Backups	Databases in single-user mode, suspect, loading, standby, and offline.
	SQL Server Filestream Databases using VSS
	The following cannot be backed up using the SQL Server <i>i</i> DataAgent:
	Full text indexes
	 SQL Server application files residing on a local hard drive
	 File system data that resides on a SQL Server computer
	Use the Windows File System <i>i</i> DataAgent to back up the above mentioned components.

 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.

- Right-click the default subclient and click **Backup**.
- 2. Click Full as backup type and then click Immediate.
 - Click OK.

1.



- 4. Once the job is complete, view the job details from the **Backup History**. Right-click the **Subclient** and select **Backup History**.
- 5. Click OK.



(Previous) Next >

🗙 What's new? 🗙 😵 Backup Job History of default 🗴 😵 Ba

Storage Policy

훯 docint01 > 📦 Client Computers > 🎘 happy01 > 🔤 SQL Server > 🐯 HAPPY01

Type

Backup List Media 5 Backup History Schedules Operation Window Properties

🐮 HAPPYOI

Job Initiatio

Immediate

Run this job nov

ect Backup Type

📀 Full

🔿 Tra

- 6. Right-click the job to:
 - Browse the databases that were backed up.
 - View items that failed, if any, during the job.
 - Resubmit the job.
 - View job details.
 - View media associated with the job.
 - View events associated with the job.
 - View backup items (you can view the database files that were backed up e.g., .mdf, .ldf).
 - View or send the log file that is associated with the job.



Previous Next >

Getting Started Restore - SQL Server iDataAgent

< Previous Next >>

As restoring your backup data is very crucial, it is recommended that you perform a restore operation immediately after your first full backup to understand the process. The following sections explain the steps for restoring a user-created database to a different location on the same destination server.

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
 - Right-click the instance and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 2. Click OK.

- In the right pane of the Browse window, select the database you want to restore.
 - Click Recover All Selected.
- 4. Click Advanced.

3.

🛕 CommCell Browser 🛛 🖗	B HAPPY01 × What's new? ×
docint01 Elent Computer Groups	🚴 docint01 > 🔘 Client Computers > 🕅 happy01 > 🍱 SQL Server > 🕂 HAPPY01
Clent Computers H Mt bilss	Subclient Name Type Storage Policy
to decint01	derault Latabase 54
DO File System 2	
3 S HAPPYO1	
Security Security Storage Resources View	Backup All Subclients
HI Policies Reports New Subclie	nt Delete
Content Director Properties	Operation Window
	Fi Job ID Operation Client Co Agent Type Subclient Job Type Phase There are no tobs currently running.
	Running: 0 Pending: 0 Waiting: 0 Queued: 0 Suspended: 0 Total
Browse Options	×
Browse the Latest D.	ata
Specify Browse Time	
Browse Data Before:	
Fri 02/18/2011	• 04 : 58 AM
	(UTC-US:UU) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Client Computer: ida39[avender 🗸 🗸
	Database O File/File Group
	0
ОК	Cancel Advanced List Media Help
Stratest ×	4 4 b 10 9 C ar
Current Selected: SQL Server/HAPPY01/Resources	ar Mana a
door of the second	10.0.2531
master	10.0.2531
245	laster 10.0.2531
Payroll	10.0.2531
Board_	Naster 10.0.2531
Recov	ar All Selected
SQL Restore Options	×
General Job Initiation	
General	
Destination Server: HAPPY01	
Source Server: HAPPY01	
Database Name: Resources	
Database State: Normal	
Restore Types	
Researce Types	O Barryan Orbi
 Database Restore 	Step Restore
Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks
Latert Parkun Data	Skip Full Backup
	apply cog backups only
Restore Time and Time zone	
Restore Time: Tuesday, Ap	126, 2011 1:26:30 PM FULL
Time Zone: (GMT-05:00)	Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Recovery Types and UndoPath	
Recovery Norecover	v O Stand by
Under Che Dentes	
GIUD FIE Paul:	Browse
Restore Options	
Unconditionally overwrite ex	isting database or files
Leave Database in DBO use	only state
Preserve Replication Setting	5
Keep Change Data Capture	
	Cancel Advanced Advanced Heln

- 5. Click the **Options** tab.
 - Rename the database name under the **Database** column.
 - Change the path of the database and log files under the **Physical Path** column.
 - Click OK.

6. Click **OK**.

- 7. You can monitor the progress of the restore job in the **Job Controller**.
- 8. Once the restore job has completed, right-click the agent and click View | Restore History.

Advanced General Startup Pre/Post Copy Pre-	cedence Data Path	Encryption Alert Options	
Database File Name ² Physic	al Path		Size ×
Resources_1 resources C:\resto	tre_test\DATA\resour	ces.mdf	2 MB
Resources_1 resources_log C:/resto	re_test\DATA\resour	ces_log.ldt	1 MB
			~
			Find & Replace
		ОК	Cancel Help
SQL Restore Uptions			
General Job Initiation			
General			
Survival .			
Destination Server: HAPPY01			×
Source Server: HAPPY01			
Database Name: Resources_1			
Database State: NOTEXIST			
Derburg Direct			
Restore Types			
Database Restore Step R	estore	 Recover Only 	
		Partial Partora	
Point-in-time Transa	ction Log Marks	- Pardar Rescore	
Latest Backup Data	Log backups only	Skip Full Backup	
Restore Time and Time zone			
Restore Time: Tuesday, April 26, 3	2011 1:26:30 PM FU	u	~
Time Zone: (GMT-05:00) Easter	rn Time (US & Canad	ta)	v
Recovery Types and UndoPath			
Recovery Norecovery	 Stand by 		
Under The Proble			
UNDO FIE Patri:			Browse
Restore Options			
🗖 Unsenditionally or country existing	dahahasa ar filas		
	Jacabase or files		
Leave Database in DBO use only st	:ate		
Preserve Replication Settings			
Keep Change Data Capture			
	<u></u>		
(ok	Cancel	Advanced 🦻 Save	As Script Help
			d h ==
Job Controller ×			¢0.0
5. Job Controller ×			
Job Controller × Job Controller Job Controller Job Doparation Client Co Agent Type Subdiant So Doparation Decard SCI Source Disc and Doparation Decard SCI Source Di	Job Type Phase	Storage NediaAgent Status	Progress Errors E S
2. Job Costroller 2. Job Costroller H Job D Operation G. Job D Operation Job D Operation Job D Operation G. Job D Operation	Job Type Phase I Transactio Database I Database	Storage NedlaAgent Status J SP docint01 Pending docint01 Running	Progress Errors C S 0% Application Error
To: Solic Controller To: Solic Controller H., Solic Controller Generation Generation Clear Con, Agent Type Solic Controller Solic Solic Controller Generation Clear Con, Agent Type Solic Controller Solic Solic Controller Generation Solic Solic Controller To: Interaction	Job Type Phase L. Transactio Database I Database	Storage Nedaligent Status 	Progress Errors C 3 0% Application Error 5%
To bit Controller × To bit Controller Ab Di Controller Git bologie To bit Di Constanti Git bologie Parame Parame Sold Science	: Job Type Phase "I Transectio Detabase Detabase	Storage NedaAgent Status 0 SP doork01 Pending doork01 Running	Progress Errors C S 0% Application En A 5%
To 300 Controller Stational To 200 Controller Stational All Display Peopolitik Stational 67 Bockware Peopolitik Stational 68 Peopolitik Stational Peopolitik Stational 69 Bockware Peopolitik Stational Peopolitik Stational 60 Peopolitik Peopol	di O Suspendedi O Total Job	Storage Nedakgent Status 2P docrit01 Pending Scont01 Ruming s: 2 Job Stream: 1 High Watemark: 100	Progress Errors C.y 0% Application Error 5%
De Contratient w Ta Bio Contrale Da Contrale Da Do Donale Dia Donale	1 Job Type Phase 1 Transectio Database I Database Statutose sti O Suspended: O Total Job	Storage NockAgert Status D.: 3P doct01 Perdag doct01 Pardag doct01 Purang s: 2 Job Stream: 1 High Watemark: 100	Progress Errors (2 0% Appleation (r) A 5%
No. Construiter → No. Construiter No. Construit Size Size Size No.	300 Type Phase Transaction Databases parabases sti 0 Suspendedi 0 Total 300 Diff SQL Ser	Storage Hedaligent Satus 5 9 doort01 Pending 5 9 doort01 Pending 5 9 doort01 Punneg 5 2 Job Streams: 1 High Watemark: 100 ver ×	Progress Errors (2.9 0% Application Error 5%
To 30 Contractive × To 30 Contract Line Source IS bound	300 Type Phase Transecto Database Database sti 0 Suspended 0 Total 300 Inf SQL Ser Subbase docint01 >	Storage Neckskopet Status 	Propess Errors C.g 0% Appleation Error 5% Appleation Error 8 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
7: 36 Construint Charl Construint 7: 36 Construint Charl Construint 1: 38 Construint Charl Construint	Job Type Phase Job Type Phase Job Type Phase Job Supported to Total Solution Job Supported to Total Solution Job SQL Ser Job SQL	30rays Medukgert 34% m. 19 docrifil Pendeg Scoreli Janneg	Pogene trees to s 96 Appleation Trie 95 Statement poppy01 > UM SQL Server Version
To Ab Constraint > To Ab Constraint Approximation Clear Col	Job Type Phase Trenactic. Debobes Job Addee	30rege Nedukgert 3zta m. 3P docet0 Pendrag 50 2 3ds 37teams: 1 kg/ widerweit 100 ver ×	Родина Стин С. 3 06 Арриона Тан 50 У Арриона Тан 90 У Арриона
To Advance Control Applied To A	Job Type Phase Trenestor. Database Job Control (1) Job Control (2) Name Mane Mane	Storage Medikagert Satura B. 2P docr80 Pendrag Storage Journey Journey Storage Journey Journey Storage Journey Journey Ver X	Program Error C.3 0% Appleation Trial 9% Appleation Trial apply01 > UA SQL Server Version 10.0.2531
To Ab Consoler To About the state of	Job Type Phane Terrescho Colobert Job Colore J	Storage Medikagert Satura b.: 2* docr60 Pendrg Score01 Pendrg Score01 Pendrg Store01 Core01 Pendrg Score01 Ver X Pendrg Score01 Store01 Clent Computers > Store01 Pendrg	Program Error C 2 // 0% Appleation Drain 5% Appleation Drain 9% SQL SQL Apply01 > DD SQL Server Version 10.0.2531
To Bocketter w To Bocketter w To Bocketter w Dia Docketter wordt Docketter wor	Job Type Phane TorrectionDebolser Debolser Debolse	Storage Medalagent Sata 	Program Error C 2 4 0% Appleation Error 0% Applea
To Accession Accession Social Section To Accession Concrete Social Section To Accession Concrete Social Section To Accession Social Section Social Section To Accession Social Section Social Section Concrete Occord Section Occord Section Concrete Social Section At Tasks •	Ab Type Phane L. Transaction. Debabases Politician ed: 0 Suspended 0 Tabla 26 Diff. SQL Ser Color SQL Ser	Storage Hecklaget Satur 	hoyese time to g
C 340 Construiter ▼ C 340 Construiter C 340 Construiter C 340 Construit	Job Type Phane Toresette Debelese F Toresette Debelese F Totabase Otabase Ot	Storage Michalgert Statu Image: Provide and Status Provide and Status Provide and Status Status Client Computers > Status Provide and Status	hoyese time t c () 0.0 Appload to () 0.0 A
* Ab Constraint * * 20 Constraint Carl Carl, Aperl Type 5 Subset * 20 Constraint Carl Carl, Aperl Type 7 Subset * 20 Constraint Carl Carl, Aperl Type 7 Subset * 10 Constraint Carl Carl, Aperl Type 7 Subset * Constraint File * Constraint File * Constraint File * South South * South Aperl Type 7 Subset * South South * South Aperl Type 7 Subset * South Properties	Ab Type Phan Terresction, Debaborst Debabo	Storage Hecklaget Status IP doctili Pedrogi Storage Storage Storage Storage Storage Storage Ver X Storage Celent Computers > Storage Y Y	Impage Error Error 0.0 Applement Fragment
To Boconter Control Stores Operations To Boconter To B	Ab Type Phane Transaction, Enablement Transaction, Enablement Exclusione Sourceworked 0 Total X& Exclusione Control Sourcework Accounties	Storage Medikaget Status h P deversition Penderg son 2 Job Streament 1 High Wederweiden 100 Penderg with 2 Job Streament 1 High Wederweiden 100 Penderg Wer X Image: Status Image: Status Wer X Image: Status Image: Status Y Y Y Y	Impact Error L g 0.6 Appload D (G)
************************************	Ab type Head Torrento Indexersion Interaction Indexersion Interaction Indexersion Interaction I	30rage Mediadget 3ata 2 doct01 Pordrag 20 2.3.8 Streams 1.162 Watemach. (0) Ver X Client Computers > 🗱 1 1 Client Computers > 🗱 1	Impact Impact<
30 Secondar 30 Control 30 Control 30 Secondar 40 Secondar 50 Monoral 50 Monoral 50 Monoral 60 Secondar 60 Secondar 60 Secondar 60 Secondar 60 Secondar 60 Secondar 7 Secondar 7 Secondar 7 Secondar 60 Pelocide 7 Secondar 7 Secondar 7 Secondar 7 Secondar 7 Secondar 7 Secondar 8 Secondar 9 Seco	A bryer Rue 1. Prest obders to packed el 8 Sacredad 0 tad bl El Sacredad 0 tad bl El Sacredad Backup Habou 1. Resource Habou 1. Resourc	Surray Heskaget Same In P dearth Peckaget Surray Same Same Same Surray Same Same Same	Impact Early Call 0.0 Activation Dis
Ab Casheller About Server A	38 hys Nam 1 Provid: 014441 00 9 Second 0 104 34 0 9 Second 0 104 34 0 9 Second 0 104 34 10 SQL Sec 10 SQL S	30rage Mediadget 3416 10 ¹⁹ 60r010 Pendreg 2012 2.363 7562 72672 2012 2.363 75624 1.162 72722 2012 Clent Computers > 825 1.162 1.162 15 Junmary 70fer X	hoyen firm (c) 0. Activity (
************************************	Ab type Name I Provet: Orders Of A Second Of 198 AM III Control International Internat	Storage Hecklaget Status IP doetil Pedroget Status 2 Address Status Status 2 Address Status IV Celent Computers > III IV IV Celent Computers > IV IV IV Status IV	Import Error Error 0:0 Arghomoto 0.0

9. Click **OK**.

Restore History Filter for: SQL Server
Destination Client Computer:
All Clients 🗸
Specify Time Range
Time Zone: (GMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Start Time End Time
1e 04/26/2011
Job Type
Recovery/Retrieve Stub Recall
Job Status
All O Completed O Failed O Killed
OK Cancel Advanced Help
t (b) seatone held history of \$1. ∨
Pictorer Mor Stub Recal Jobs
Job ID Status Instance Status Instance Status Instance Enror Code 3 25 © Completed MeXPMI1 2011/04/27 06:41:35 0 101/04/27 06:41:35 0 101/04/27 06:41:35 0 400/04
Veren robuste bano Successful Vien Ico Detals Paled Potto Wannand
Veex Events Al
C Send Logs > Tatal records found: 10

 Image: Second second

10. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:

View Restore Items

You can view them as Successful, Failed, Skipped or All.

- View Job Details
- View Events of the restore job.
- View Log files of the restore job
- View Job Path
- Send Logs
- Resubmit Job
- **11.** Once the database is restored, verify that the restored database and log files are available in the restore destination provided during step 5.

CONGRATULATIONS - YOU HAVE SUCCESSFULLY COMPLETED YOUR FIRST BACKUP AND RESTORE.

If you want to further explore this Agent's features read the **Advanced** sections of this documentation.



Advanced Configuration - SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Understanding the CommCell Console	Command Line Operations
Creating User-Defined Subclients	Log on to the CommServe
For Databases	Configure Subclients
	Perform Command Line Operations from Microsoft SQL Management
Manually Discovering New Instances Enable / Disable Automatic Discovery Setting the Discovery Frequency	
Enabling/Disabling Automatic Database Discovery Manually Discovering Databases	
Automatically Discovering Databases in Offline States For All Clients For Individual Clients	
Excluding Databases from Backups	
Managing Databases Deleted from SQL Server In the Default Subclient In User-Defined and Default Subclients	
Specifying Databases for OnDemand Backup Selecting Backup types for On Demand Backups and Executing the Backups	
Specifying File and Filegroups for OnDemand Backup	
Setting Up Backup Conversion Rules For Default and Database Subclients For File/Filegroup Subclients	
Enhancing Performance During Backups	
Configuring the Number of Log Backups to Run Before a Full Backup	
Configuring Log Backups to Run Without Full Backups	
Performing Backups using VSS	
Configuring Data Streams	
Configuring User Accounts for Backups At the CommCell Level At the Client Computer Group Level At the Agent Level At the Instance Level	
Modifying an Agent, Instance, or Subclient	
Deleting an Agent, Instance, or Subclient	
Deleting an Agent Deleting an Instance Deleting a Subclient	

UNDERSTANDING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

The Microsoft SQL Server $i{\rm DataAgent}$ uses the following logical entities to manage backup and restore operations from the CommCell Console.

AGENT

Facilitates SQL instance discovery.

INSTANCE Defines the SQL Server instance to be backed up.

SUBCLIENT

Defines the SQL databases to be backed up.

Control Browser Control Computer Groups Control Computer Soups Control Computer Soups Control Contro

CREATING USER-DEFINED SUBCLIENTS

By default, all databases within each SQL Server instance are automatically assigned to the default subclient. This subclient backs up the entire instance.

If you want to divide your backups into smaller groups, you can do so by creating user-defined subclients as described in the following sections.

FOR DATABASES

If you want to back up groups of specific databases, you can do so by creating a user-defined subclient containing any number of databases that exist within the instance. This is useful if you want to back up a subset of databases at certain times or with a particular frequency.

When you create a user-defined subclient, the contents of the user-defined subclient will be excluded from the Default Subclient.

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the Instance, point to New Subclient, and then click Database.
- 3. In the **Subclient Name** box, type a name.
- 4. Click the Storage Device tab.
- 5. From the **Data Storage Policy** sub-tab, click a storage policy name from the **Storage Policy** list.
- 6. From the Log Storage Policy sub-tab, click a storage policy name from the Storage Policy list.
- 7. Click the **Content** tab and then click **Configure**.
- 8. Click Discover.
- 9. From the **Subclient Name list** in the **Database Configuration** window, select the name of this subclient for each database you want to include.
- 10. Click OK to save the content.
- 11. Click OK.

FOR FILES AND FILEGROUPS

In many cases, large databases may contain portions of data that require more frequent backups than others. For example, tables consisting of records entered on a daily basis may require nightly backups, whereas tables consisting of records entered on a quarterly basis may require only monthly backups. You can group such elements together by creating a user-defined subclient for files or filegroups.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- Right-click the Instance, point to New Subclient, and then click Files and Filegroups.
- 3. In the Subclient Name box, type a name.
- 4. Click the Storage Device tab.
- 5. From the **Data Storage Policy** sub-tab, click a storage policy name in the **Storage Policy** list.
- 6. From the Log Storage Policy sub-tab, click a storage policy name in the Storage Policy list.
- 7. Click the Content tab and then click Configure.
- 8. From the **File/FileGroup Configuration** window, select the database containing the files or filegroups you want to back up from the **Database** list.
- 9. Click Discover.
- 10. Expand the nodes in the Name list.
- 11. In the **Subclient Name** list, select the name of this subclient for each file or filegroup you want to include.
- 12. Click **OK** to save the content.
- 13. Click OK.

It is recommended that filegroups be configured rather than individual files. Filegroups require less overall maintenance and reduce the need to manually add or remove individual files to the subclient.

MANAGING INSTANCES

MANUALLY DISCOVERING NEW INSTANCES

		[New SQL Sub	lient Properties			8
(Storage Device	Activity Control	Encryption	Security	SQL Settings
-	Use these dialogs discover and select or file groups.	t files	Database:	CONTRACT BO	oup kuies	Prepro	IST PYOCESS
			File Group	Logical File	Physical F	ile	×
File/File Grou	p Configuration			23			^
Database:	Resources	÷	Discover)			
Name	Turne	Diversal File Name		Scholant	1		-
PRIMARY	FileGroup			Resources			
resou	ropresources	C:\Program Files\M	55QL2008V455QL1.	Resources		onfigure	Delete
				\bigcirc			
€				,	1		
hange all selecte	d FFG to: Resources		-				
Thange all selecte	d FFG to: Resource:	;	•]				
thange all selecte	d FFG to: Resources	(•] OK Ca	ncel Help]		
thange all selecte	d FFG to: Resource	;	•] OK Ca	ncel Help			

Database Name	¹ Subclient Name	
Board_Master	default	1
Budget	Budget	
Payroli	Budget	•
Resources	Budget	
Resources_1	default	
Staff_Master	Do Not Backup	
Student_Master	payroll	
doctest	default	
master	default	L
model	default	
model_test	default	
Change all selected database	to:	Ψ

By default, new instances added to the SQL Server are automatically discovered if the option to do so was enabled during the SQL Server *i*DataAgent installation. If this option was not enabled during installation, you can discover new instances at any time as follows:

- 1. Ensure you have a user account with sufficient privileges to create a new instance. Refer to the Configuring User Accounts for Backups section on this page for information on required account privileges.
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 3. Right-click SQL Server and click New SQL Server.
- In the Server Name list, select the name of the SQL Server instance you want to assign to this instance.
- 5. In the Server Type area, check the Override higher levels settings check box.
- 6. Click OK.

Server	r Name: OffSite	
Version	on:	
ierver	r Type:	
	Override higher levels settings	
	Lice Local Sustem Account	
-	o ose Local system Account	
	Impersonate User	
	User Name	
	Password	
rage F	Policies	
efaul	Ilt Database Storage Policy: SP 🔹	
Defaul	Ilt Log Storage Policy: SP 🗸	

ENABLE / DISABLE AUTOMATIC DISCOVERY

If you enable automatic discovery new SQL Server instances will be discovered as follows:

- Every 24 hours.
- Whenever the Communications Service (GxCVD) is restarted (such as after a computer reboot).

This capability ensures all instances are accounted for on a daily basis for backups.

If you want to enable or disable automatic instance discovery, you can do so as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click SQL Server and click Properties.
- 3. Check or clear the Auto discover instances check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

SQL Serve	r Prope	erties						2
General Ver	rsion S	security	Activity Contro	Authentic	ation			
Client Comp	puter:	happyl	01					
iDataAgent		SQL Se	rver					
Installed:		Monda	y, April 25, 2011					
Auto d	iscover	instance	15					
Manag	e Conte	int Auto	matically					
Descriptio	n							
					ſ	OK	ancel	Help

SETTING THE DISCOVERY FREQUENCY

If you want instances to be automatically discovered on a more or less frequent basis, you can do so as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- 2. Right-click the *<Client>* and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In the Name field, type nAutoDiscoverSQLInstanceTimeout.
- 6. In the **Location** list, select CVD from the dropdown list.
- 7. In the **Type** list, select **REG_DWORD**.
- In the Value field, type the number of minutes to discover instances.
 For example, to discover instances every two hours, type 120.

User Guide - SQL Server iDataAgent

9. Click OK.

	ottling Polic	ties Job Cor	figuration	Encryption	Advanced
General Ver	sion Security	Activity Con	trol Groups	Firewall Co	nfiguration
Content Ind	exing	Registry Key Sett	ings	Client Side Dedu	plication
Name	Location	Туре	Value	Enabled	
Add D	nister Kerren V	Vindour Client	id=10.d===2010		
Add Ke	gistry key on v	vindows Client	Ida40dpm2010		~
Name	nAutoDiscove	erSQLInstanceTim	eout		
Location	Co.d				
Locutori	Cva				•
Type	Baranan and an an a				-
Value	100				
Tulue	120				
		C	K Can	cel Help	
		7			
		/			
		Add Edit	Delete		

ENABLING/DISABLING AUTOMATIC DATABASE DISCOVERY

By default, new databases created on the SQL Server are automatically discovered and assigned to the default subclient. You can disable this functionality as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the default subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Enable or clear the Disable Automatic Discovery check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.



MANUALLY DISCOVERING DATABASES

If automatic discovery of databases is disabled, you can manually add databases to a subclient as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the default subclient and click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Content** tab.
- 4. Click Configure.
- 5. Click Discover.
- In the Subclient Name list, select the subclient to which the database you want to add should be assigned.
- 7. Click **OK** to save your settings.
- 8. Click **OK**.

General Content Backup Pules Prefitest Process Database lat: Backup Pules Database lat: Database lat: Database Configuration Database		Storage Device	Activity Co	ntrol Encryp	tion Se	curity	SQL Settings
Database Configuration Database Configuration Database Configuration Database Configuration Database context default and defau		General	Content	Backup Rules		Pre/Post	Process
Dabase hare - 1 Subdert Name - 1 - 1	Database Configura	Database List: Board_Master Budget doctest model model tect ion	4				E
orad (Jaster) default 3 * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	Database Name	×1 Su	bolient Name		*		
udget defauk synol poyrol esources defauk toti // Netor defauk toti // Netor defauk octes defauk octes defauk octes defauk octes defauk octes toti / defauk	oard_Master	def	aut 3		×	1	
syrol peyrol peyrol <u>belete</u> <u>belete</u> esources <u>defauk</u> esources, <u>1</u> <u>defauk</u> adir, Master <u>defauk</u> octest <u>defauk</u> octest <u>defauk</u> adel <u>defauk</u> adel <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u> <u>defauk</u>	udget	def	ault				
esouross default esouros default defundant default uber, Moster default otes default otes default otes default otes default otes default otes default otes default default otes default default otes default defaul	ayroll	pay	roll		Co	nfigure	Delete
esouras_1 defauk tudent_Master defauk tudent_Master defauk octest defauk sater defauk odel defauk hange all selected databases to: 2 OK Cancel Discover Heb	esources	def	ault				
Varif Master dafauk voten, Master dafauk ottest dafauk ottest dafauk odel aut votel sent OK Cancel Discover Heb	esources_1	def-	ault		E		
huber, Master dafauk octast dafauk sater dafauk odal dafauk hange all selected databases to: 2 0K Cancel Discover Heb	taff_Master	def-	ault				
octost ddfault aster ddfault octol ant ddfault octol ant ddfault aster ddfault octol ant ddfault OK Cancel Discover Heb	tudent Master	def-	aut				
aster defaut odel and defaut nange all selected databases to: 2 OK Cancel Descover Heb	octest	def-	aut				
odel default range all selected databases to: OK Cancel Discover Heb	aster	def.	auk				
Add and the second databases to: 2	odel	def	aut				
hange all selected distabases to:	ordal hart	كمل	ault		Ŧ		
	hange all selected databa	ses to: Cani	cel Discov	er Help			

AUTOMATICALLY DISCOVERING DATABASES IN OFFLINE STATES

By default, offline databases in the following states are not automatically discovered:

- Standby
- Restoring
- Suspect (will also include the Standby state)
- Shutdown (will also include the Suspect and Standby states)
- Offline

You can configure automatic discovery of offline databases for one or all clients as described below.

FOR ALL CLIENTS

- 1. Log on to the CommServe computer.
- 2. From the command prompt, navigate to <software_installation_path>\base.
- 3. Run the following command:

qoperation execscript -sn SetKeyIntoGlobalParamTbl.sql -si DatabaseStateString -si y -si <database_state>

where <database state> is the database state(s) to be discovered.

If entering more than one state, separate each with a semicolon.

FOR INDIVIDUAL CLIENTS

Configuring this option will override the configuration at the CommServe level described in the For All Clients section above.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In the Name field, type sDiscoverDatabaseStates.
- 6. In the **Location** list, type MSSQLAgent.
- 7. In the Type list, select REG_MULTI_SZ.
- 8. In the **Value** field, type the databases state or states that will be discovered. If entering more than one state, separate each with a semicolon.

For example, to discover databases in the Suspect, Shutdown, and Standby states, enter the following:

suspect;shutdown;standby

9. Click OK.

EXAMPLE:

qoperation execscript -sn SetKeyIntoGlobalParamTbl.sql -si DatabaseStateString -si y -si suspect;shutdown;standby

In this example, databases in the suspect, shutdown, and standby states will be automatically discovered.

Netv	vork Throttl	ing Polic	ies Job Cor	nfiguration	Encryption	Advance
Gener	al Versio itent Indexi	n Security ng F	Registry Key Sett	itrol Groups ings	Client Side Dedu	onfiguration uplication
Name		Location	Туре	Value	Enable	d
_						
l	Add Rei	gistry Key on	Windows Clier	nt ida40dpm20	10	X
	Location	MSSQLAGE	NT			•
	Туре					•
	Value	suspect				
			1	ок	Cancel H	lelp

EXCLUDING DATABASES FROM BACKUPS

In some cases, it may be necessary to exclude certain databases from backups for a period of time. For example, you may have configured an entire SQL Server to back up using a particular schedule, but do not require all databases to be backed up according to that schedule. You can exclude databases from backups by following the steps below.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the database subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Content** tab.
- 4. Click Configure.
- 5. Click Discover.
- 6. In the **Subclient Name** list, select the subclient to which the database you want to add should be assigned.
- 7. Click **OK** to save your settings.
- 8. Click **OK**.

Database Name	 Subclient Name 	**
Board_Master	default	-
Budget	default	-
Payroll	default	
Resources	Do Not Backup	
Resources_1	payrol 45	=
Staff_Master	default	
Student_Master	default	
doctest	default	
master	default	
model	default	
model tect	default	
"hanne all selected database	es to:	
Inange all selected database	is (0);	Y

MANAGING DATABASES DELETED FROM SQL SERVER

Databases that are deleted from the SQL Server are handled differently during backups depending on how the database was discovered and the type of subclient the database was originally assigned to.

Specifically:

- For default subclients:
 - o Automatically discovered databases are automatically removed from the subclient upon deletion from the SQL Server.
 - $\circ\;$ Manually discovered databases must be manually removed from the subclient content.
- For user-defined subclients, automatically and manually discovered databases are not removed from the subclient upon deletion from the SQL Server. However, you can remove these databases manually from subclient content.

The following sections provide information on managing databases that have been deleted from the SQL Server.

IN THE DEFAULT SUBCLIENT

AUTOMATICALLY DISCOVERED DATABASES

By default, when automatically discovered databases are deleted from the SQL Server, they are removed from the default subclient content during the subsequent backup.

In some cases, it may be desirable to manage all databases deleted from the SQL Server manually. For example, if a database is accidentally deleted from the SQL Server, it may not be desirable for it to be removed from the subclient during the next backup, especially if the next backup may occur while attempting to bring the deleted database back. Follow the steps below to manage deleted databases manually for the default subclient:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click SQL Server and click Properties.
- 3. Clear the Manage Content Automatically check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

General	Version	Security	Activity Control	Authentication	1		
Client	Computer:	happy(1				
iDataA	gent:	SQL Se	rver				
Installe	:d:	Monda	, April 25, 2011				
V AU	to discove	r instance	5				
V AU	to discove	r instance	5				
Ma	to discove nage Con	r instance ent Autor	natically				
Deso	nage Con iption	r instance tent Autor	natically				
Desc	nage Con inage Con	r instance tent Autor	natically				
Deso	to discove inage Con iption	r instance tent Autor	atically			 	
Desc	to discove inage Con ription	r instance	atically				

MANUALLY DISCOVERED DATABASES

Databases that have been manually added to the default subclient are not automatically removed from the subclient if deleted from the SQL Server. To ensure that the subsequent backup jobs complete without any errors, deleted databases from the server should be removed from the subclient.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the default subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Content** tab.
- 4. Select the database you want to delete from the **Database List**.
- 5. Click Delete.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Storage Device	Activity Cont	rol Encryption	Security	SQL Settings
General	Content	Backup Rules	Pre/P	ost Process
Database List:				
master				
model				
model_test				
msdb				
msdb_test				
Resources				=
Resources_1				
Staff_Master				
Student_Master				
			Configure	Delete
			Configure	Delete

IN USER-DEFINED AND DEFAULT SUBCLIENTS

By default, databases are not automatically removed from subclients when deleted from the SQL Server. If a database is deleted from the SQL Server, the next backup performed on its associated subclient will not complete successfully.

You can also configure the subclient to automatically remove such databases as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- 2. Right-click the *<Client>*, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In the Name field, type nIgnoreNonExistentDB.

A global parameter IgnoreNonExistentDB can be used to configure all SQL clients. You can use the Command Line Interface to do so, see qcommand execscript for details.

- 6. In the **Location** list, type **MSSQLAGENT** from the dropdown box.
- 7. In the Type list, select REG_DWORD.
- 8. In the **Value** field, type 1.
- 9. Click OK.

Network Th	rottling	Policies	Job Config	uration	Encryption	Advanced
General V Content In	ersion dexing	Security	Activity Control jistry Key Settings	Grou	ps Firewall Client Side Dec	Configuration duplication
lame	Local	tion	Туре	Value	Enabl	ed
Name Location Type Value	nIgne n MSSC REG	reNonExister 2LAgent _DWORD) Canc	el Help	
			-	Delate	1	

To automatically delete the databases from the subclient, set registry key <code>nlgnoreNonExistentDB</code> to 1.

SPECIFYING DATABASES FOR ONDEMAND BACKUP

OnDemand backup allows content to be specified as an external input at the time of initiating a data protection operation. Whereas traditional backups operations are performed on subclients, which have fixed content configured prior to performing the operation. On Demand backup allows you the flexibility of specifying content each time you perform a backup operation.

Use the following procedure to configure and perform OnDemand backup for Database subclients:

- 1. Download the CreateOnDemandDBSub.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af CreateOnDemandDBSub.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -dataBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPdata -logBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPlog where

clientName = client1,

instanceName = client1\instance1,

subclientName = subclient1,

dataStoragePolicy = SPData,

logStoragePolicy = SPLog.

3. Create a database list file (as a text file) for the databases you plan to backup. This database list file must be located on the Client computer, for which subclient needs to be created.

You may specify any databases to be backed up using the Database File List. There must be one entry per line in the file.

- 4. Download the backup_template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 5. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af c:\backup_template.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -ondemandinputfile c:\DatabaseFile.txt -backupLevel FULL

SELECTING BACKUP TYPES FOR ON DEMAND BACKUPS AND EXECUTING THE BACKUPS

You can modify the argument file (xml file) to perform different types of backups such as Full, Transaction Log and Differential backups, you can do so as follows:

1. The xml file will have the backup type parameter available, for example the Full backup parameter of the xml file (SQLbackup.bat):

backupLevel>
FULL</backupLevel>

can be changed to

<backupLevel>INCREMENTAL<backupLevel>

for Transaction Log backup

or to

<backupLevel>DIFFERENTIAL<backupLevel>

for Differential backup.

2. Execute the batch file using the following query in SQL Server Management Studio:

exec master..xp_cmdshell 'C:\SQLbackup.bat'

SPECIFYING FILE AND FILEGROUPS FOR ONDEMAND BACKUP

OnDemand backup allows content to be specified as an external input at the time of initiating a data protection operation. Whereas traditional backups operations are performed on subclients, which have fixed content configured prior to performing the operation. On Demand backup allows you the flexibility of specifying content each time you perform a backup operation.

Use the following procedure to configure and perform OnDemand backup for File and Filegroup Subclients:

- 1. Download the CreateOnDemandFFGSub.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af CreateOnDemandFFGSub.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -dataBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPdata -logBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPlog

where

clientName = client1, instanceName = client1\instance1, subclientName = subclient1, dataStoragePolicy = SPData, logStoragePolicy = SPLog.

 Create a file and file group list file (as a text file) for the files you plan to backup in the following format. Also ensure that the list file must be located on the Client computer, for which subclient needs to be created.

DatabaseName<\tab>FileGroupName<\tab>LogicalFileName

You may specify any files belonging to the same database only. There must be one entry per line in the file.

- 4. Download the backup_template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 5. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af c:\backup_template.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -ondemandinputfile c:\FileList.txt -backupLevel FULL

SETTING UP BACKUP CONVERSION RULES

Backup conversion rules provide the facility to convert certain types of backups to another backup type under specific circumstances. This functionality helps ensure all SQL data is protected regardless of circumstances that may cause a failure.

FOR DEFAULT AND DATABASE SUBCLIENTS

By default, database backups are converted as depicted in the following table.

BACKUP CONVERSION	CONDITIONS FOR CONVERSION	BENEFIT OF CONVERSION
ТҮРЕ		
Log Backup to Differential Backup	The database recovery model is set to Simple .	Because the Simple recovery model does not support log backups, converting to a differential backup ensures both logs and data are properly backed up. This, in turn, provides the facility to restore the logs.
Differential Backup to Full Backup	A full backups was performed using other software.	For first-time users, starting with a full backup provides complete protection as a baseline for future backups.
All Backups to Full Backups	 You are running your first backup using this software. Database creation time is newer than the last backup performed using this software. The last restore performed was a Point-in-Time or Transaction Mark restore. 	Converting to full backups in these scenarios ensure you have complete protection of the latest state of each database. In the case of system databases, a full backup will ensure the restored database is backed up at the most recent point-in- time.
	 Any system database (i.e., master, model, msdb) was restored after the last backup. 	

If you want to disable this functionality, you can do so using the steps below.

Keep in mind that disabling this option for one scenario disables the option for all scenarios listed above. As such, it is recommended this option remain enabled to ensure no data is unintentionally left out of a backup.

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the default subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Click the Backup Rules tab.
- 4. Disable the **Convert** check box.
- 5. Click OK.

Subclient Propert	ies of default		
Storage Device General	Activity C Content	ontrol Encryption Backup Rules	Security SQL Settings Pre/Post Process
Ceneral Convert Convert Convert Cop backups to di Differential back. 1. A ful backups to ful 1. Database rec Differential back. 1. A ful backups to ful 1. First backup. 2. Database re 3. Last restore t 4. Any system Cop backups: Convert log Do not conve Fiele or Fiel gr	Content Ffrential backup overy model is : ps to full backup was performed backups it softwas asing this softwas asing this softwas asing this softwas asing this softwas asing this softwas asing this softwas asing this softwas backups to full if ert log backups to pups are added	bachup Rules ps fri et to "Simple", ss fri using other software. rre. ver than the last backup per me" or "Transaction mark" re stored after the last backup a log backup was performed o full if a log backup was per	FreiPlast Process
		OK	Cancel Help

CONVERSION OPTIONS FOR LOG BACKUPS

By default, log backups performed outside of the system (for example, using SQL Enterprise Manager) are automatically converted to full backups. This provides a baseline for future backups.

If necessary, you can preserve the log backups performed by previous software packages as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the default subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Click the Backup Rules tab.
- 4. Enable the **Convert** check box.
- 5. Select the **Do Not Convert Log Backups to Full if a Log Backup Was Performed Using Other Software** option.
- 6. Click the SQL Settings tab.
- 7. Select the **Disable Log Consistency Check** check box.
- 8. Click **OK**.



DISABLING CONVERSION OF TRANSACTION LOG BACKUPS TO DIFFERENTIAL

If the Convert checkbox is selected, all backups convert as specified in the rules of the dialog box. However, if you want to skip the conversion of Transaction Log Backups to differential backups for subclients with databases set to simple recovery model, you can do so by configuring additional settings to set bSkipTLForSimpleRecoveryModelDB.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter bSkipTLForSimpleRecoveryModelDB in the Name field.

A global parameter SkipTLForSimpleRecoveryModelDB can be used to configure all SQL clients. You can use the Command Line Interface to do so, see qcommand execscript for details.

- 6. Enter MSSQLAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select **REG_DWORD**.
- 8. In the **Value** field type 1.
- 9. Click **OK**.

General Ver Job Configural	sion Secur ion Encry;	ity Activity Cont ation Advanced	rol Groups Firew Content Indexing	all Configuration Ne Registry Key Settings	work Throttling Policie Client Side Deduplicatio
Name		Location	Туре	Value	Enabled
	🛃 Add Re	gistry Key on Wir	dows Client ida18		×
	Name	bSkipTLForSimple	RecoveryModelDB		
	Location	MSSQLAgent		•]
	Туре	REG_DWORD]
	Value	1			
			ОК	Cancel Help	
		A	id Edit 🛙)siste	

CONVERSION OPTIONS FOR FILES AND FILEGROUPS IN A DATABASE

By default, if files or filegroups have been added to a database since the previous backup, the next backup will automatically be converted to a full backup. This ensures the new files or filegroups are given proper protection as quickly as possible, regardless of the type of backup originally intended.

If you do not require this functionality, you can disable it as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the default subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Click the Backup Rules tab.
- 4. Enable the **Convert** check box.
- 5. Clear the File or Filegroups are added check box.
- 6. Click OK.



FOR FILE/FILEGROUP SUBCLIENTS

By default, all backups performed on File/Filegroup subclients are automatically converted to full backups as depicted in the following table:

BACKUP CONVERSION	CONDITIONS FOR CONVERSION	BENEFIT OF CONVERSION
ТҮРЕ		
All Backups to Full Backups	 First backup using this software. Database creation time is newer than the last backup performed using this software. Subclient content is modified. 	Converting to full backups in these scenarios ensure you have complete protection of the latest state of each file/filegroup.

If you do not want backups to convert to full backups under these circumstances, you can disable this option by following the steps below.

Keep in mind that disabling this option for one scenario disables the option for all scenarios listed above. As such, it

is recommended this option remain enabled to ensure no data is unintentionally left out of a backup.

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the file or filegroup subclient and click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Backup Rules tab.
- 4. Clear the **Convert** check box.
- 5. Click **OK**.



ENHANCING PERFORMANCE DURING BACKUPS

Several options are available for enhancing backup performance reducing network bandwidth overhead. These options include:

- Limiting the maximum size of data blocks used during backups.
- Specifying the number of buffers used to reserve bandwidth for data transfer.
- Limiting the maximum amount of data to be transferred at a time during backups.

You can configure these options as follows:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the default subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Click the SQL Settings tab.
- 4. Enter the desired number of data blocks to use during backups in the Block Size box.

All data transfers are in integral multiples of this value. The default value being 65,536 bytes (i.e., 64KB) or any value between 512 bytes and 65,536 bytes (inclusive) may be entered.

5. Enter the desired number of buffers to use during data transfer in the **Buffer Count** box.

The default value is 20.

6. Enter the maximum number of bytes to transfer at a time in the **Maximum Transfer Size** box.

The default value (in bytes) is 2097152.

- Make sure the Application Read Size value on the Data Transfer Option tab has the same or greater value as the Maximum Transfer Size; otherwise, backups may fail.
- The default value being 2,097,152 bytes (i.e., 2,048KB) or enter a value in multiples of 64 KB ranging between 65,536 bytes and 4,294,967,296 bytes (i.e., 4 MB)

Subclient Propertie	es of default		—
General	Content	Backup Rules	Pre/Post Process
Storage Device	Activity Control	Encryption	Security SQL Settings
Block Size	65536	Bytes	The values
Buffer Count	20		displayed here are the default values.
Maximum Transfer Si	ze 2097152	Bytes	
Disable Log Consi	istency Check		-
		OK	Cancel Help

7. Click OK.

CONFIGURING THE NUMBER OF LOG BACKUPS TO RUN BEFORE A FULL BACKUP

Full backups are necessary at regular intervals as it reduces the chance of data loss if one of log backup becomes corrupted as it will invalidate (not restorable) all other log backups performed after that. This key is used for the purpose of re-enforcing the need of a full backup after certain number of transaction log backups have run. When this registry key is configured, a minor event will be generated in the Event Viewer to remind users to run a full backup after the configured number of transaction log backups have run.

Use the following steps to configure the number of log backups:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nLogThreshHoldValue in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSSQLAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the Type list, select REG_DWORD.
- 8. Enter a number in the **Value** field. Range is [1 <max_integer>].

This value specifies the number of transaction log backups that will be taken before a minor event is issued to remind users to run a full backup.

9. Click OK.

General Version	Security Activ Advanced Cor	vity Control Groups	Firewal Configuration Registry Key Settings	Policies Job Cor Client Side Dedup	figuration lication
Name	Location	Туре	Value	Enabled	3
	Ka J Na Lo Ty	Add Registry Key ame nLogThresh cation MSSQLAgen pe REG_DWOR	on Windows Client ha HoldValue t D	рру01	
		0	CK	Cancel Hel	,

CONFIGURING LOG BACKUPS TO RUN WITHOUT FULL BACKUPS

By default, a full backup is required after performing a log backup. If you do not require a full backup at the time you want to back up the logs (for example, a full backup was performed outside of the system), you can do so as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the subclient and click Properties.
- 3. Click the **SQL Settings** tab.
- 4. Enable the **Disable Log Consistency Check** check box.
- 5. Click OK.



PERFORMING BACKUPS USING VSS

In some cases, it may be desirable to allow write operations on SQL databases being backed up to continue while the backup runs. This is especially critical in environments where data entry to a SQL database is constant (such as databases being used daily in different parts of the world). Enabling VSS for backups provides this capability.

VSS can be enabled for backups of local volumes in both clustered and non-clustered environments. If the operating system fails to create a shadow copy of the data a traditional backup of the data will be performed, and a corresponding message will appear in the Event Viewer.

When VSS backups are performed, the following will automatically occur:

• All previously scheduled traditional full backups convert to VSS full backups.

- All previously scheduled differential and transaction log database backups are unaffected.
- All previously scheduled File/Filegroup backups are blocked from running.
- Immediate and scheduled VSS full backups run as single-stream backups.

During a VSS backup, the total amount of free space depends on the size of the backup data. As such, make sure to have sufficient disk space when you perform VSS backups.

- 1. Navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the instance and click **Properties**.
- 3. Enable the **Use VSS** check box.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Properties of SQ	L Server:BLISS	23
General Accounts	Security	
Client Name: iDataAgent:	bliss SQL Server	
Version:	10.0.1600	
Server Type: VDI Timeout:	DataBase Engine 300 = Seconds	
Use VSS		
Description		
		-
	OK Cancel Hel	

CONFIGURING DATA STREAMS

By default, backup data is sent to media in two streams. This means that a database, or a portion thereof, is sent to media during a backup in two parallel waves. This results in the backup taking about half the time to complete as it otherwise would if only one stream is used.

You can increase the number of streams used for backups for a particular subclient provided the number of streams does not exceed the maximum number configured in the subclient's storage policy. Increasing the number of streams for a subclient further reduces the amount of time a backup takes to complete. For example, increasing the number of streams from 2 to 3 enhances backup time from one-half that of a single stream to one-third.

Keep in mind that the number of streams configured for backups must also be used when restoring data. For example, if you configure a subclient to use 4 streams, you must also use 4 streams to restore the data.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies | Storage Policies.
- Right-click the storage policy associated with the subclient you want to increase the streams for and click **Properties**.
- 3. Ensure the number in the **Device Streams** box is greater than the number of streams you want to configure for the subclient.

Storage Folicy Propertie	Si or	Cocuritu	0.dupp.cod	~
Storage Policy Name: S Storage Policy Name: S No. of Copies: 2 Device Streams: S Enable Stream Randou Hide Storage Policy Description	P andard 10 1	security	Advanced	
Incremental Storage Legal Hold Enable this Storage	Policy Policy Policy for Legal Holds			-

- 1. Navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the subclient and click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Storage Device Tab tab.
- 4. Increase (or decrease) the number of streams in the **Number of Streams for data backup** box.
- 5. Click the Log Storage Policy tab.

- 6. Increase (or decrease) the number of streams in the **Number of Streams for** transaction log box.
- 7. Click **OK**.



CONFIGURING USER ACCOUNTS FOR BACKUPS

The SQL Server iDataAgent requires a Windows user account that has sufficient privileges for the software to:

- Perform backups and restores
- Access the Windows registry
- Stop or start the SQL Server services.

The following table illustrates the requirements for the user account you will need to provide:

IF THE SQL SERVER IS:	THE USER ACCOUNT SHOULD BE:
On a non-Domain Controller	 Local Administrator of the computer on which the SQL Server resides. Member of the SQL sysadmin fixed server role.
	 User account from which SQL Server services are running. If this account differs from the Local Administrator account, you must provide the credentials of the account used by the SQL Server services.
On a Domain Controller	An account other than the Domain Administrator account that has Administrator and SQL sa privileges.

By default, the local system administrator account is used for all components. You can change the user account to be used for backups at the CommCell, Client Computer Group, Agent, and Instance levels. Accounts configured at each level will be used for all entities within that level as described in the following sections.

In order to access the SQL Server databases to perform data protection and recovery operations, the SQL sysadmin rights are required.

AT THE COMMCELL LEVEL

This user account will be used for all SQL Server iDataAgents in your CommCell. Configure the user account at this level if one person will be conducting all backup and restore operations in your organization.

- 1. Navigate to Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click the SQL iDataAgent Configuration icon.
- 3. Select the following:

Use Local System Account if the computer's Administrator account contains the required privileges.

Impersonate User if you want to use a different account that contains the required privileges. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** for this account in the space provided.

4. Click OK.



AT THE CLIENT COMPUTER GROUP LEVEL

This user account will be used for all computers within a Client Computer Group. Configure the user account at this level if different people will be conducting

backup and restore operations for each Client Computer Group in your organization. This user account will override the user account configured at the CommCell level.

1. Navigate to Client Computer Groups.

- 2. Verify that all the SQL Server clients for which you wish to configure the user account is included in the Client Computer Groups.
- 3. Right-click the Client Computer Group and click **Properties**.
- 4. Enable the Override higher levels settings check box.
- 5. Select the following:

Use Local System Account if the computer's Administrator account contains the required privileges.

Impersonate User if you want to use a different account that contains the required privileges. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** for this account in the space provided.

6. Click OK.

AT THE AGENT LEVEL

This user account will be used for all instances and associated subclients. Configure the user account at this level if one person will be conducting all backup and restore operations on the client on which the SQL Server *i*DataAgent is installed. This user account will override the user account configured at the CommCell and Client Computer Group levels.

SQL Server Properties

General Version Security Activity Control Authentication

Verride higher levels settings

User Name

Use Local System Account

 Impersonate User

- 1. Navigate to Client Computers | <Client>.
- 2. Right-click SQL Server and click Properties.
- 3. Click the Authentication tab.
- 4. Enable the **Override higher levels settings** check box.
- 5. Select the following:

Use Local System Account if the computer's Administrator account contains the required privileges.

Impersonate User if you want to use a different account that contains the required privileges. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** for this account in the space provided.

6. Click **OK**.

AT THE INSTANCE LEVEL

This user account will be used for all subclients within the instance. Configure the user account at this level if backup and restore operations will be conducted by a different person for each instance. This user account will override the user account configured at the CommCell, Client Computer Group, and Agent levels.

- 1. Navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the instance and click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Accounts tab.
- 4. Enable the **Override higher levels settings** check box.
- 5. Select the following:

Use Local System Account if the computer's Administrator account contains the required privileges.

Impersonate User if you want to use a different account that contains the required privileges. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** for this account in the space provided.

6. Click OK.

Properties of SQL Server:HAPPY01	×
General Accounts Security	
Qverride higher levels settings O Use Local System Account	
Impersonate User	
User Name	
Password	
Close	Help

COMMAND LINE OPERATIONS

You can add, modify or delete several configurable properties for SQL iDataAgent from command line.

Command line configuration enables you to:



×

OK Cancel Help

- configure the same properties across multiple clients simultaneously.
- reuse the same configurations for additional entities.

The following sections describe the available command line configurations:

LOG ON TO THE COMMSERVE

To run command line operations you must first login to the CommServe as follows:

• From Command prompt, navigate to <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base and run the following command:

qlogin -cs <commserve name> -u <user name>

• For example, to log on to CommServe 'server1' with username 'user1':

qlogin -cs server1 -u user1

CONFIGURE INSTANCES

CREATE AN INSTANCE

- 1. Download the CreateSQL_Instance_Template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af CreateSQL_Instance_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx

MODIFY AN INSTANCE

- 1. Download the ModifySQL_Instance_Template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af ModifySQL_Instance_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx

GET INSTANCE PROPERTIES

- 1. Download the GetSQL_Instance_Properties_Template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af GetSQL_Instance_Properties_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName
xxxxx

DELETE AN INSTANCE

- 1. Download the DeleteSQL_Instance_Template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af DeleteSQL_Instance_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx

AVAILABLE COMMAND PARAMETERS FOR INSTANCES

The following table displays all the parameters that you can use with the commands mentioned in the above sections. To add a parameter to your command, use the following syntax: (An example is provided at the end of the table.)

qoperation execute	-af	<template< th=""><th>XML</th><th>file></th><th>-<parameter< th=""><th>name></th><th><value></value></th></parameter<></th></template<>	XML	file>	- <parameter< th=""><th>name></th><th><value></value></th></parameter<>	name>	<value></value>
--------------------	-----	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----	-------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------	-----------------

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION OF PARAMETER VALUES
description	A general description of the instance if needed.
clientName	Name of the client computer.
appName	Name of the application. In this case it would be 'SQL Server'.
instanceName	Name of the SQL instance. If you are specifying an instance other than the default instance, the name must be entered along with the client name, e.g. client1\instance1.
vDITimeOut	The time the system must wait for the SQL server to become ready. Time value is in seconds.
useVss	Option to enable/disable VSS.
overrideGlobalAuthentication	Ontion to override Global Authentication.
	Valid values are True/False.
useLocalSystemAccount	Option to use Local Administrator account.
	Valid values are 0/1.
userName	Name of the database administrator who has permissions to perform jobs.
password	Password for the database user
propertyLevel	Properties to be retrieved for the instance.
	Valid values are:
-------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
	ListOnly - List the instance names
	BasicProperties - Retrieves the basic properties, such as description, version, etc.,
	• ExtendedProperties - Retrieves all the properties for the instance.
	AllProperties - Retrieves all the properties for the instance.
The following example shows how to add a parameter for a command:	

Enable VSS	To enable VSS for the instance, add the 'useVSS' parameter to the following command:		
	qoperation execute -af ModifySQL_Instance_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -useVSS true		

For detailed information on the instance parameters see Instance Properties.

CONFIGURE SUBCLIENTS

CREATE SUBCLIENT

- 1. Download the CreateSQL_Subclient_Template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af CreateSQL_Subclient_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx subclientName xxxxx -dataBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName xxxxx -logBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName xxxxx

GET SUBCLIENT PROPERTIES

- 1. Download the GetSQL_Subclient_Properties_Template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af GetSQL_Subclient_Properties_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName
xxxxx -subclientName xxxxx

MODIFY SUBCLIENT

- 1. Download the ModifySQL_Subclient_Template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af ModifySQL_Subclient_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx subclientName xxxxx

DELETE SUBCLIENT

- 1. Download the remove_subclient_template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameter values.

qoperation execute -af remove_subclient_template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx subclientName xxxxx

AVAILABLE COMMAND PARAMETERS FOR SUBCLIENTS

The following table displays all the parameters you can use with the commands mentioned in the above sections. To add a parameter to your command, use the following syntax: (Some examples are provided at the end of the table.)

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION OF PARAMETER VALUES
appName	Name of the application. In this case it would be 'SQL Server'.
backupsetName	Name of the backupset. In this case, it would be 'defaultBackupSet'.
clientName	Name of the client computer.
subclientName	Name of the SQL subclient.
instanceName	Name of the SQL instance. If you are specifying an instance other than the default instance, the name must be entered along with the client name, e.g. client1\instance1.
enableBackup	Option to enable backup of Subclient. Valid values are True/False.
encryptionFlag	 Option to set the encryption points during backups. Valid values are: ENC_MEDIA_ONLY, to encrypt the backup data after transmission and prior to storage on the media. ENC_NETWORK_AND_MEDIA, to encrypt the backup data before transmission. The data is stored encrypted on the media. ENC_NETWORK_ONLY, to encrypt the backup data for transmission and then decrypt the data prior to storage on the media.

qoperation execute -af <template XML file> -parameter name> <value>

	• ENC NONE, to disable data encryption.
readBuffersize	This is used for tuning SQL Server performance.
	Valid values are 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048 and 4096
onDemandSubClient	Use this ontion during creation of a subclient
ondernandsabenent	
	Valid Values are True/False.
networkAgents	Number of Network Agents.
softwareCompression	Option to enable compression on the cheft of MediaAgent computer. Valid Values are:
	• ON_CLEENT, to enable software compression on the clent.
	• ON_MEDIAAGENT, to enable software compression on the MediaAgent.
throttleNetworkBandwidth	OFF, to disable software compression. Enhancing backup performance by reducing network bandwidth overhead
	Velid velves are 0/1
ata wa a a Dallar (Nawa a	Values are U/1.
storagePolicyName	Name of Storage Policy to be associated for Backup.
	Valid values are True/False.
generateSignature	A component of deduplication performed on the client or MediaAgent computer. Valid values are:
	ON_CLIENT, to enable signature generation on the client.
	 ON_MEDIA_AGENT, to enable signature generation on the MediaAgent.
	OFF, to disable signature generation.
backupRules	Option to set Backup conversion rules. Valid values are:
	 CONVERT_WITH_FILE_FILEGROUPS_NOT_ADDED, to convert log backups to full if a log backup was performed using State of the set of the
	other software with file or file group not added.
	 CONVERT_WITH_FILE_FILEGROUPS_ADDED, to convert log backups to full if a log backup was performed using other software with file or file group added.
	 DONOT_CONVERT_WITH_FILE_FILEGROUPS_NOT_ADDED, do not convert log backups to full if a log backup was performed using other software with file or file groups are not added.
	 DONOT_CONVERT_WITH_FILE_FILEGROUPS_ADDED, do not convert log backups to full if a log backup was performed using other software with file or file groups are added.
	CONVERT_DISABLED, to disable backup conversion rules.
bufferCount	Number of data blocks to use during backups to improve performance.
maxTransferSize	Maximum number of bytes to transfer at a time to tune performance.
	Valid values in bytes are 65536, 131072, 262144, 524288, 1048576, 2097152, and 4194304.
numberOfBackupStreams	Number of Backup Streams.
numberOfTransactionLogStream	Number of Transaction Log Streams.
runPostBackup	Option to run a process after backup completes.
	Valid values are Yes/No.
postBackupCommand	Path to the post process script that will be run after the backup.
preBackupCommand	Path to the pre process script that will be run before the backup.
runAs	Option to specify the user name who has permissions to run the pre/post process scripts. Valid values are:
	• USE_IMPERSONATION, to specify a user with enough privileges to run the scripts. When using this value, you also need to provide the user credentials:
	-prepostUserName/userName <user name=""> -prepostUserName/password <password></password></user>
	• USE_LOCAL_SYS_ADMIN, to use the administrator account to run the scripts.
sqlSubclientType	Type of SQL subclient. Valid values are:
	DATABASE, to back up groups of specific databases.
	• FILE_FILEGROUP, to back up portions of data from large databases.
contentOperationType	Modification type. Valid values are
	ADD, to add content to the subclient
	OVERWRITE, to overwrite contents to the subclient.
	DELETE, to delete the contents from the subclient.
disableLogConsistencyCheck	Option to disable log consistency check.
	Valid values are True/False.

The following examples show how to add an parameter for a command:

Enable Backup	To enable backup for a subclient, add the 'enableBackup' parameter to the following command:		
	<pre>qoperation execute -af ModifySQL_Subclient_Template.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -enableBackup true</pre>		
Setting a Storage Policy	To assign a storage policy to a subclient, add the 'storagePolicyName' parameter to the following command:		
	<pre>qoperation execute -af modify_storage_policy.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 - dataBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPdata -logBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPlog</pre>		
Creating an On Demand	To create an on demand database subclient, add the 'onDemandSubClient' and 'sqlSubclientType' parameters to the following command:		

Database Subclient	<pre>qoperation execute -af CreateSQL_Subclient_Template.xml -appName `SQL Server' -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -onDemandSubClient true - sqlSubclientType DATABASE -dataBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPData - logBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPLog</pre>
Creating an On Demand File/FileGroup Subclient	To create an on demand file/filegroup subclient, add the 'onDemandSubClient' and 'sqlSubclientType' parameters to the following command:
	<pre>qoperation execute -af CreateSQL_Subclient_Template.xml -appName `SQL Server' -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -onDemandSubClient true - sqlSubclientType FILE_FILEGROUP -dataBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPData - logBackupStoragePolicy/storagePolicyName SPLog</pre>
Adding Content to a Subclient	To add content to a subclient, add the 'contentOperationType' parameter to the following command: qoperation execute -af modify_subclient_content.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -sqlSubclientType DATABASE -mssqlDbContent/databaseName DB1 -contentOperationType ADD
Overwriting Content to a Subclient	To overwrite content to a subclient, add the 'contentOperationType' parameter to the following command: qoperation execute -af modify_subclient_content.xml -appName 'SQL Server' -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -subclientName subclient1 -sqlSubClientType DATABASE -mssglDbContent/databaseName DB1 -contentOperationType OVERWRITE

For detailed information on the Subclient parameters see Subclient Properties.

PERFORM COMMAND LINE OPERATIONS FROM MICROSOFT SQL MANAGEMENT STUDIO

Besides using the operating system's command line interface, you can also perform the command line operations from MSSQL Management Studio interface by integrating the commands within the SQL scripts. Registration of stored procedure and execution of commands should be done from SQL Server version 2008 or higher.

Use the following steps to run command line operations from SQL Management Studio:

1. Execute the query to register the stored procedure to a specific SQL database (eg., msdb) in MSSQL Management Studio.

In order to do this, make sure the trustworthy database property for the SQL database is set to ON.



2. Log in to the CommServe using the SQL scripts. For example,

```
USE [msdb]

GO

DECLARE @return_value int,

@response nvarchar(max)

EXEC @return_value = [dbo].[cv_cmdshell]

@input = N'qlogin -u "commandline" -

ps "3d4b14baf641d429e2b3782c1ed5d0a64" -cs "commserve.companyname.com"',

@response = @response OUTPUT
```

You can login to the CommServe using an encrypted or open password.

o For encrypted password, run a save as script operation from the CommCell Console and view the .bat file to retrieve the encrypted password.

• Open password can be provided as shown below:

@input = N'qlogin -u "admin" -clp "admin"',

3. Execute the command line operation using SQL scripts.

Examples:

Creating an Instance	DECLARE @return_value int, @response nvarchar(max) EXEC @return_value = [dbo].[cv_cmdshell] @input = N'qlist instance -c client1 -a Q_MSSQL', @response = @response OUTPUT IF RTRIM(@response) LIKE N'client1\instance1%'

1	
	Print 'Instance already exists'
	ELSE
	Print 'Creating instance client1\instance1'
	EXEC @return_value = [dbo].[cv_cmdshell]
	<pre>@input = N'qoperation execute -af e:\MyFolder\createSQL_Template.xml -instanceName clien \instance1 -clientName client1',</pre>
	@response = @response OUTPUT
	where, e:\MyFolder is the location where the template XML is saved.
Performing a full backup	DECLARE @return_value int,
	@response nvarchar(max)
	EXEC @return_value = [dbo].[cv_cmdshell]
	<pre>@input = N'qoperation execute -af e:\MyFolder\full.xml -subClientName subclient1 - clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 -ondemandinputfile C:\MyTest\myDBsContent.txt',</pre>
	@response = @response OUTPUT
	where, myDBsContent.txt is the content file that list the databases to be backed up and
	e:\MyFolder is the location where the template XML is saved.
Perform a restore	DECLARE @return_value int,
	@response nvarchar(max)
	EXEC @return_value = [dbo].[cv_cmdshell]
	<pre>@input = N'qoperation execute -af e:\MyFolder\restore_template.xml -clientName client1 - instanceName client1\instance1 -toTimeValue 2011-11-28 15:40:00 -restoreSource DB1 - database DB1',</pre>
	@response = @response OUTPUT
	where
	e:\MyFolder is the location where the template XML is saved and the $-toTimeValue$ is the backup finish date.

UN-REGISTERING THE SQL DATABASE

You can un-register the stored procedure from the SQL database by executing the below query:



MODIFYING AN AGENT, INSTANCE, OR SUBCLIENT

There are several configurable properties available for your agent that can be modified from the agent, instance, or subclient level as per need.

It is recommended that you do not modify the properties of a subclient when a job is in progress for that specific subclient. If a job is in progress, either wait for the job to complete or kill the job from the Job Controller.

The following table describes the properties that can configured from the agent, instance, and subclient levels.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
Change Storage Policies	You can modify the storage policies in any of the following situations:	Refer to Storage Policies.
	 To include a different media for the backup operation. 	
	• To use a storage policy with a different retention criteria.	
	You can change the storage policies from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select the Storage policy from the drop-down menu.	

	5 Click OK	
Rename a Subclient		
	Tou can rename a subclient:	
	1. From the Commicell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Type the new name in the Subclient name field.	
Data Transfer Ontions	4. Click OK . You can efficiently configure the available resources for transferring data secured by data	Refer to Data Compression and
	protection operations from the subclient level. This includes the following:	Network Bandwidth Throttling.
	 Enable or disable Data Compression either on the client or the MediaAgent. Configure the transfer of data in the network using the options for Network Bandwidth 	
	Throttling and Network Agents.	
	You can configure the data transfer options.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Click Data Transfer Option tab.	
	5. Choose the appropriate software compression option for this subclient.	
	6. Select Throttle Network Bandwidth and set the required bandwidth.	
	7. Click OK.	
View Data Paths	You can view the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected storage policy or incremental storage policy. You can also modify the data paths including their priority from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select Storage Policy from the drop-down menu.	
	5. Click Data Paths.	
Configure a Subclient for Pre/Post Processing of	You can add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the subclient. These are batch files or shell scripts that you can run before or after certain job phases.	Refer to Pre/Post Processes.
Data Protection	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties .	
	3. Click Pre/Post Process .	
	 Click one of the following phases and type the full path of the process that you want to execute during that phase. Alternatively, click Browse to locate the process (applicable only for paths that do not contain any spaces). 	
	• PreBackup Process	
	PostBackup Process	
	5. Click OK .	
	 Select Run Post Backup Process for all attempts to run a post backup process for all attempts. 	
	7. For subclients on Windows platforms, Run As displays Not Selected .	
	If you want to change the account that has permission to run these commands, click Change .	
	a. In the User Account dialog box, select Use Local System Account, or select Impersonate User and enter the user name and password. Click OK.	
	b. If you selected Local System Account, click OK to the message advising you that commands using this account have rights to access all data on the client computer.	
Configure Activity Control	You can enable backup and restore operations from the agent and subclient level. However, you can enable restore operations only from the agent level.	Refer to Activity Control.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Activity Control , select or clear option(s) as desired.	
	4. Click OK .	
Configure User Security	You can configure user security from the agent or subclient level.	Refer to User Administration
	You can perform the following functions:	anu Security.
	 Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated. 	

I		
	 Associate this object with a user group. 	
	 Disassociate this object from a user group. 	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Security.	
	 Select the appropriate user groups to which you want to associate to the CommCell object from the Available Groups pane, and then move the user group to the Associated Groups pane. 	
	5. Click OK .	
Enable/Disable Data Encryption	You can enable data encryption from the suclient level.Encryption must be enabled at the client level prior to configuring any instances residing on that client.	Refer to Data Encryption.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Encryption.	
	4. Select the desired encryption.	
	5. Click OK .	
View Software Version	The Version tab, at the Agent level displays the software version of the component.	
and Installed Updates	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the agent.	
	2. Click Properties .	
	3. Click Version.	
	4. Click OK .	
CommCell Configuration Report	The CommCell Configuration Report provides the properties of the CommServe, MediaAgents, clients, agents, SRM agents, subclients, and storage policies within the CommCell based on the selected filter criteria.	Refer to CommCell Configuration.
	1. From the CommCell browser, click Reports icon.	
	2. Select CommCell Configuration.	
	3. Click Run .	

DELETING AN AGENT, INSTANCE, OR SUBCLIENT

The following sections describe the steps involved in deleting an agent, instance, or subclient.

When you delete an instance or backupset, the associated data is logically deleted and you can no longer access the corresponding data from CommCell Console for recovery purposes.

Refer to the troubleshooting article on Recovering Data Associated with Deleted Clients and Storage Policies for information on how to recover data if you accidentally delete an entity.

DELETING AN AGENT

You need to uninstall or DeConfigure the agent software from the client computer before deleting from CommCell Browser. After you delete the client software, you can either leave the corresponding data intact for appropriate action or you can remove the data immediately. If you choose to remove the data immediately, you must delete the agent from the CommCell Browser. If you delete the agent, all of the agent's data is irretrievably lost.

- You cannot delete an agent while operations for that agent are running.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client>.
- 2. Right-click the <Agent>, and then click Delete.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed with the following message:

This operation will permanently delete the data backed up from this level and it cannot be restored.

4. Click **OK** to continue with the deletion operation., or click **No** to abort the deletion.

DELETING AN INSTANCE

Consider the following before deleting an instance:

- When you delete a specific instance all job schedules and job histories that pertain to any of the levels within the deleted instance are deleted.
- You cannot delete an instance if it is being backed up. Attempts to delete an instance under such conditions cause the deletion to fail. If a backup is in progress, either wait for the backup to complete or kill the backup job using the Job Manager. Once the backup is no longer in progress, you can delete the instance level.
- You cannot delete an instance if there is only one instance present for an agent. To delete the final instance, you must remove the agent software from the

client computer.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the instance that you want to delete, click **All Tasks** and then click **Delete**.
- 2. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion. (Clicking **No** cancels the deletion and retains the node.)
- 3. Type the requested phrase in the Enter Confirmation Text dialog box and click OK. This should delete the instance.

DELETING A SUBCLIENT

Consider the following before deleting a subclient:

- You cannot delete a default subclient.
- Schedules associated with the subclient are also automatically deleted.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | <Agent> | <Instance>
- 2. Right-click the *<subclient>* that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed, asking if you want to delete the subclient.

Click No to cancel the deletion and retain the subclient, or click Yes to continue the deletion.

Advanced Backup – SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Full Backups	Command Line Backups
Transaction Log Backups Automatically Start a Transaction Log Backup after a Successful Backup Run Transaction Log Backups Without Running a Full Backup Back Up Transaction Log of a Damaged Database (Do Not Truncate Logs) Tail Log Backup Configure Number of Log Backups Before Running Full	Log on to the CommServe Perform the Backup Generate the Command Line Script from CommCell Console
Differential Backups	
Compressing Backups with Native SQL Compression (for SQL Server 2008 or later)	
Perform Partial Backup to Exclude Read-Only FileGroups	
Scheduling a Backup	
Managing Jobs Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs	
Additional Options	

FULL BACKUPS

Full backups provide the most comprehensive protection of data.

Backups for any client start with a full backup. The full backup becomes a baseline to which subsequent backup types are applied. For example, a full backup must be performed before a transaction log backup can be initiated.

Use the following steps to run a full backup:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click an < Instance> and click Backup All Subclients.
- 3. Select Full as the backup type and click Immediate.
- 4. Click OK.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**. When the backup has completed, the **Job Controller** displays **Completed**.



TRANSACTION LOG BACKUPS

A transaction log backup captures the transaction log which contains a record of all committed or uncommitted transactions. Transaction log backups are consistent with the start time of the backup.

The use of transaction log backups make point-in-time recovery possible. This is useful in the scenario of a database failure where it is unacceptable to lose any data and you want to restore to the point of failure. If you use only full and differential backups, you will be able to restore to the time of the backup, but not to a point-in-time between backups.

A transaction log backup is similar to a traditional incremental backup you might perform on a file system because the transaction log backup contains only the new changes since the full or another transaction log backup.

Each time a transaction log is backed up it is truncated to the exact time of the backup. No checkpoint is issued at this time, therefore dirty pages are not written to disk before or after a transaction log backup. If there are dirty pages, any completed transactions will need to be rolled forward if a transaction log restore is performed. Any transactions that are not completed at the time a transaction log backup is performed are rolled back during a restore involving a transaction log backup.

Use the following steps to run a transaction log backup:

- 1. Ensure that the SQL Server database is in full or bulk-logged recovery mode.
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 3. Right click a < Subclient > and click Backup.
- 4. Select **Transaction Log** as backup type.

- 5. Click Immediate.
- 6. Click **OK**.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**. When the backup has completed, the **Job Controller** displays **Completed**.



AUTOMATICALLY START A TRANSACTION LOG BACKUP AFTER A SUCCESSFUL BACKUP

You can start a Transaction Log backup automatically after a successful Full or Differential backup. This is useful when you want to back up logs immediately after a data backup, and allows you to do so without creating two scheduled jobs.

Use the following steps to automatically run a transaction log after a backup:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL** Server | <*Instance>*.
- 2. Right click an <**Subclient**> and click **Backup**.
- 3. Select Full or Differential backup type and click Immediate.

Backup Options for Subclient:	
Backup Options	
Select Backup Type Transaction Log Do Net Truncate Log Differential	Job Initiation O Initiation Run this job now O Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
۱	Cancel Advanced Drave As Script Help
Advanced Backup Ontions	
Deta Startup I Job Retry Media Partial (Excludes read-only Fil Partial (Excludes read-only Fil Tai Log Backup Nettive 50L backup compressi Copy-Only Create Backup Copy immediat Note: Creation of backup copy de	Data Path VaultTracking Alert sfull Backup agroups) 2] ely pends on the Storage Policy - Snapshot configuration
	OK Cancel Help

- 4. Click Advanced.
- 5. Click Start Log Backup After Successful Backup.
- 6. Click **OK**.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**. When the backup has completed, the **Job Controller** displays **Completed**. Note that the simultaneous running of file or file group backup jobs is not supported.

RUN TRANSACTION LOG BACKUPS WITHOUT RUNNING A FULL BACKUP

Use the following steps to perform transaction log backups without having to run full backups first.

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click a <**Subclient**> and click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the SQL Settings tab and select Disable Log Consistency Check.
- 4. Click OK.

General General Storage Device				
storage Device	Lontent Content	Backup Rules	Pre/Po	st Process
	Activity Contro		security	Size Securitys
Block Size	65536	± Bytes		
Buffer Count	20	×		
Maximum Transfer Siz	e 2097152	Bytes		
Disable Log Consis				
			OK Cance	el Help
		_		
Subclient Proper	ties of default	26		
Storage Device General	Activity Contro	Backup Rules	Security Pre/Po	SQL Settings st Process
Convert				
Log backups to diffe	erential backups if:	100 1 II		
I. Database recov	to full backups if:	Simple .		
1. A full backup wa	as performed using	other software.		
All backups to full ba 1. First backup usi	ackups if: ng this software.			
2. Database creati	on time is newer th	han the last backup p or "transaction mark"	erformed using thi	is software.
3. Last restore Wa	s a "point in time" d		rescore.	
4. Any system dat	s a "point in time" o abase was restore	d after the last back	up.	
Last restore wa 4. Any system dat Log backups: ① Convert log back	s a "point in time" o abase was restore kuns to full if a loo	d after the last back	up.	Tuare
Last restore wa 4. Any system dat Log backups: Convert log bac 	s a "point in time" o abase was restore :kups to full if a log	d after the last back	ned using other sol	tware.
Last restore wa 4. Any system dat Log backups: Convert log bac Do not convert 	s a "point in time" (abase was restore ckups to full if a log log backups to full	d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p	ned using other sol	itware. her software.
. Last restore wa 4. Any system dat Log backups: Convert log backups: Convert log backups: Do not convert File or File groups:	s a "point in time" of abase was restore :kups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p	ned using other sol	itware, her software,
Lust resore wa Any system dat Log backups: Convert log back Do not convert File or File grou	s a "point in time" o abase was restore ckups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back	ned using other sol	itware. her software.
A. any system dat Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log backups: Do not convert File or File grou	s a "point in time" (abase was restore clups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back	ned using other sol	itware. her software.
A. any system dat Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log backups: Do not convert Pile or File grou	s a "point in time" (abase was restore dups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back	red using other sol	itware, her software,
A. any system dat Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log backups: Do not convert Pile or Pile grou	s a "point in time" (abase was restore dups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back	rescore.	tware. her software.
A. any system dat Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or Pile grou	s a "point in time" (abase was restore dups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back	rescie.	itware. her software.
A. any system dat Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or File grou	s a "point in time" of abase was restore drups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back	rescore.	tware. her software.
 Last resort was Any system dat Log backups: Convert log backups: Do not convert De not convert File or File grou 	s a pont in time (d after the last back	resurce ,	itware. her software.
A. Any system dat Any system dat Log backups:	s a pont in time (d after the last back	Heavier and using other sol performed using ot performed using ot Cence	itware. her software.
A. any system dat Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or File grou	e a pont in time (d after the last back	Hexage Hed using other sol beformed using other DK Cance	itware. her software.
A. Last rescore was A. Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or Pile grou File or Pile grou	repairs of the second secon	d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if a log backup was p	Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence: Hence:	itware. her software.
A. Last rescore was A. Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or File grou File or File grou	se a pont in time 'e adoase was restore skups to full if a log log backups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if a <u>log backup</u> was p	N Cance	tware. her software.
A. Last rescore was A. Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or Pile grou	s a pont in time (d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if a <u>log backup</u> was p	Insource (Insource) Insource	tware, her software,
A. Lay system dat A. Ary system dat A. Ary system dat Do not convert log bac Do not convert File or File grou	**	d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if a log backup was p	K Cance Cance Conce	tware. her software.
A Lay system dat A gay system dat Do not convert log bac Do not convert File or File grou	a pont in time (a base was restore sups to full if a log log backups to full ps are added	d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if a log backup was p	Instruction ued using other sol beeformed using other SK Cancel Come Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com	tware. her software. H Help
A. Last rescore was A. Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or Pile grou		d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if		tware. her software. H Help
A. Last rescore was A. Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or File grou		d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if	Instruction and using other sol beeformed using other SK Cancel Come State	tware, her software,
A. Last rescore was A. Any system dat Log backups: O Convert log back Do not convert Pile or File grou	10 To a pont in time 'c slops to full if a log log backups to full ps are added to a post of the slope to a post of the	d after the last back backup was perform if a log backup was p if	Cance C	tware, her software, d d f r r r r r r r r r r r r r r r r r

- 5. Click Backup Rules tab and clear Convert to disable the backup rules.
- 6. Click **OK.**

7. Run a full backup using SQL Server Management Studio (or any other application used to backup SQL Server).

8. Run a transaction log backup using the CommCell Console.

Badup Options Select Badup Type Ful Timesettion Log Do Not Truncate Log	Job Intradion O Intraduce But this jub now O Scholar fan	
O Differential	Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Confi	telp

Immediate
 Rup this job s

🔿 Schedule

Cancel Advanced 🚱 Save As Script Help

BACK UP TRANSACTION LOG OF DAMAGED DATABASE (DO NOT TRUNCATE LOGS)

If you experience a database failure and you want to restore to the point of failure, a Transaction Log Backup with **Do not truncate log** must be initiated. This backups the database when it is damaged, regardless of its state.

O Full

O Diff

Do Not Truncate L

It is used for capturing all transaction log events occurred since the last backup was run. This operation does not empty the active transaction log.

Use the following steps to disable log truncation during a backup:

- 1. Ensure that the SQL Server database is in full or bulk-logged recovery mode.
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 3. Right click a < Subclient > and click Backup.
- 4. Select Transaction Log as backup type.
- 5. Select Do Not Truncate Log.
- 6. Click Immediate.
- 7. Click **OK**.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**. When the backup has completed, the **Job Controller** displays **Completed**.

TAIL LOG BACKUP

When backing up transaction logs, you can choose to back up the tail of the log to capture the log records that have not yet been backed up. A tail-log backup prevents work loss and keeps the log chain intact. A tail-log backup allows you to recover a database to the point of failure; otherwise you can only recover a database to the end of the last backup that was created before the failure. For example, if a database was damaged or a data file was deleted, you should run a tail-log backup before attempting a file/file group restore. After the log tail is backed up, the database will be left in the RESTORING state.

Use the following step to backup the tail of a transaction log:

Ensure that the SQL Server database is in full or bulk-logged recovery model. To view or change the recovery model of a database:

- 1. After connecting to the appropriate instance of the Microsoft SQL Server Database Engine, in Object Explorer, click the server name to expand the server tree.
- 2. Expand **Databases**, and, depending on the database, either select a user database or expand **System Databases** and select a system database.
- 3. Right-click the database, and then click **Properties**, which opens the **Database Properties** dialog box.
- 4. In the Select a Page pane, click Options.
- 5. The current recovery model is displayed in the Recovery model list box.
- 6. Select either Full or Bulk-logged.



- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 8. Right click a < Subclient > and click Backup.
- 9. Select Transaction Log as backup type.
- 10. Click Immediate.



11. Click Advanced.

- 12. Click Tail Log Backup.
- 13. Click OK.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**. When the backup has completed, the **Job Controller** displays **Completed**. Note that the simultaneous running of file or file group backup jobs is not supported.

CONFIGURE NUMBER OF LOG BACKUPS BEFORE RUNNING A FULL BACKUP

Full backups are necessary at regular intervals as it reduces the chance of data loss if one of log backup becomes corrupted as it will invalidate (not restorable) all other log backups performed after that. This key is used for the purpose of re-enforcing the need of a full backup after certain number of transaction log backups have run.

When this registry key is configured, a minor event will be generated in the Event Viewer to remind users to run a full backup after the configured number of transaction log backups have run.

Use the following steps to configure the number of log backups:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter nLogThreshHoldValue in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSSQLAgent in the Location field.
- 7. From the Type list, select REG_DWORD.
- 8. Enter a number in the Value field. Range is [1 <max integer>].

This value specifies the number of transaction log backups that will be taken before a minor event is issued to remind users to run a full backup.

9. Click OK.



DIFFERENTIAL BACKUPS

A differential backup contains only the data that is new or has been changed since the last full backup. Differential backups consume less media and use less resources than full backups. Differential backups are cumulative. This means that each differential backup contains all changes accumulated since the last full backup. Each successive differential backup contains all the changes from the previous differential backup.

Use the following steps to run a differential backup:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click a <**Subclient**> and click **Backup**.
- 3. Select Differential as the backup type and click Immediate.



COMPRESSING BACKUPS WITH NATIVE SQL COMPRESSION (FOR SQL SERVER 2008 OR LATER)

Backups can be compressed before it is backed up to reduce the size of the backup. Typically, compressing a backup will require less device I/O which should increase backup speed significantly. However, CPU usage may increase for compressed backups and you may need to evaluate performance counters. Scheduling the backup during off-peak hours or compressing only low-priority backups may be desirable.

When using compression, there is no need for deduplication as the data will already be compressed and deduplication will not consequently save any more space.

Use the following steps to enable compression:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click a <**Subclient**> and click **Backup**.
- 3. Select a backup type and click Immediate.

ackup Options for Subclient:				
Backup Options				
Select Bodup Type Image: Select BodupType Image: Select BodupType Image: Select BodupType	3db Intendente O Intendetate Run this job now O Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure			
(Cancel Advanced Prove As Script Help			
Advanced Backup Options				
Data Startup Job Retry Media	Data Path VaultTracking Alert			
Data Startup Job Retry Media Data Path YaukTracking Alert Start Log Backup After Successful Backup Partial (Excludes read-only Filegroups) Tail Log Backup Visitive SQL backup compression Copy-Only Create Backup Copy Immediately Note: Creation of backup copy depends on the Storage Policy - Snepshot configuration 				
	OK Cancel Help			

4. Click **Advanced**.

- 5. Click Native SQL backup compression.
- 6. Click OK.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**. When the backup has completed, the **Job Controller** displays **Completed**. Note that the simultaneous running of file or file group backup jobs is not supported.

PERFORM A PARTIAL BACKUP TO EXCLUDE READ-ONLY FILEGROUPS

A partial backup contains the following:

- All the data in the primary file group,
- Every read/write filegroup,
- Any optionally-specified read-only files

Partial backups are useful whenever you want to exclude read-only file groups. A partial backup is not supported when backing up transaction logs.

Use the following steps to enable partial backups:

 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.

- 2. Right-click a <**Subclient**> and click **Backup**.
- 3. Select a backup type and click **Immediate**.



- 4. Click Advanced.
- 5. Click Partial (Excludes read-only Filegroups).
- 6. Click **OK**.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller**. When the backup has completed, the **Job Controller** displays **Completed**. Note that the simultaneous running of file or file group backup jobs is not supported.

COMMAND LINE BACKUPS

You can perform backups of one or more SQL databases from the command line interface.

Command line backups enable you to perform backup operation on multiple clients simultaneously. In order to run the backups from command line, you need an input xml file which contains the parameters for configuring the backup options. This input xml file can be obtained from one of the following ways:

- Download the input xml file template and save it on the computer from where the backup will be performed.
- Generate the input xml file from the CommCell Console and save it on the computer from where the backup will be performed.

LOG ON TO THE COMMSERVE

To run command line operations you must first login to the CommServe as follows:

From Command prompt, navigate to <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base and run the following command:

```
qlogin -cs <commserve name> -u <user name>
```

• For example, to log on to CommServe 'server1' with username 'user1':

```
qlogin -cs server1 -u user1
```

PERFORM THE BACKUP

- 1. Download the backup_template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the following command from the <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base folder after substituting the parameters and attributes.

qoperation execute -af backup_template.xml -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx -subclientName xxxxx

3. Verify the status of the job using the following command:

qlist job -j JOBID

4. Once the job completes, logout from the CommServe using the qlogout command.

qlogout [-cs commserver] [-all] [-tf tokenfile] [-tk token] [-h]

EXAMPLES

Performing a Full Backup	<pre>qoperation execute -af backup_template.xml -backupLevel FULL -subclientName subclient1 - clientName client1 -instanceName client1/instance1</pre>
Performing a Transaction Log Backup	qoperation execute -af backup_template.xml -backupLevel INCREMENTAL -subclientName

	subclient1 -clientName client1 -instanceName client1/instance1		
Performing a Differential Backup	qoperation execute -af backup_template.xml -backupLevel DIFFERENTIAL -subclientName subclient1 -clientName client1 -instanceName client1/instance1		
Performing an On Demand Backup	<pre>qoperation execute -af backup_template.xml -backupLevel FULL -subclientName subclient1 - clientName client1 -instanceName client1/instance1 -ondemandinputfile C:\test\myDBsContent.txt</pre>		
	where myDBsContent.txt is an input file that list the databases as follows:		
	DB1		
	DB2		
	To run ondemand backup for File File Group, the input file should list the database name, file group name and file name as follows:		
	DB1 <tab>Group1<tab>File1inGroup1</tab></tab>		
	DB1 <tab>Group2<tab>File2inGroup1</tab></tab>		

GENERATE THE COMMAND LINE SCRIPT FROM THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

In addition to the parameters provided in the template xml file, if you want to include additional options for the backup, you can do so by selecting the required options from the CommCell Console and generate the command line xml script for the backup.

Follow the steps given below to generate a script which you can use to perform a backup from the command line interface:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right click an <**Subclient**> and click **Backup**.
- 3. Select the required backup options which you want to execute using the script.
- 4. Click Save as Script.

tup options for Substitent:	
Select Backup Type Select Backup Type Transaction Log D Mat Transate Log D Mferential	Sob joinston © Inredute Run the pb now O Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern
	Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help
Save As Script	
Client ashai64 Path	•]
Mode	Suchassia
Asynchronous	Synchronous
Specify user account to ru Use the currently k User Name: admi	n the script ogged in user account
Use a different use User Name: Password:	r account
Confirm Password:	
	OK Cancel Help

5. Enter the location where you want to save the script or click **Browse** and navigate to the location.

The script will be saved as a .xml file and a .bat file is created.

If a file with the same name already exists in the specified location, the .xml file will be created with a timestamp. However, the .bat file will overwrite the existing file.

6. Enter the username and password for the user account which you want to use to perform the backup.

By default, the user account which you have used to login to CommCell console is used for performing the backup. However, if the user account does not have access to any application or database, click **Use a different account**.

7. Click **OK**.

SCHEDULING A BACKUP

Follow the steps given below to schedule a backup:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
 - Right-click a <**Subclient**> and click **Backup**.



- Select the **Backup type**.
 - Click **Schedule** to schedule the backup for a specific time.
 - Click **Configure** to set the schedule for the backup job. The Schedule Details dialog displays.

Select Backup Type				
 Ful Transaction Do Not T Differential 	.og runcate Log	Job Initiation Immediate Run this job Configure Sc	hedule Pattern	Configure
Schedule Details) OK Cancel	Advanced (Save As Script Hel
One Time Daily Weekly Monthly	Start Time	9 : 00 PM	1	
() Yearly	On these days	 ✓ Monday ✓ Thursday ✓ Sunday 	✓ Tuesday Friday	Vednesday

3. Select the appropriate scheduling options. For example:

- Click Weekly.
- Check the days you want the run the backup job.
- Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM.
- Click **OK** to close the Schedule Details dialog.
- Click **OK** to close the Backup Options dialog.

The backup job will execute as per the schedule.

See Scheduling for a comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

MANAGING JOBS

Jobs can be managed in a number of ways. The following sections provide information on the different job management options available:

RESTARTING JOBS

Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

Backup jobs for this Agent are resumed from the point-of-failure.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, click **Control Panel** icon.
- 2. Select Job Management.
- 3. Click Job Restarts tab and select a Job Type.
 - Select **Restartable** to make the job restartable.
 - Change the value for **Max Restarts** to change the maximum number of times the Job Manager will try to restart a job.
 - Change the value for **Restart Interval (Mins)** to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click **OK.**



CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY FOR AN INDIVIDUAL JOB

- 1. From the CommCell Console, navigate to <*Client*> | SQL Server | <Instance>.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient** and select **Backup**
- 3. Click Advanced.

- 4. In the **Advanced Backup Options** dialog box, click the **Job Retry** tab.
- 5. Select **Enable Total Running Time** and specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed.

Select **Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires** to kill the job after reaching the maximum elapsed time.

6. Select Enable Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries.

7. Click OK.



CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.
RESUME	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.
KILL	Terminates a job.

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Suspend.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Resume.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

See Job Management for a comprehensive information on managing jobs.

ADDITIONAL OPTIONS

The following table describes the available additional options to further refine your backup operations:

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
Startup Options	The Startup Options are used by the Job Manager to set priority for resource allocation. This is useful to give higher priority to certain jobs. You can set the priority as follows:	Refer to Job Priority and Priority Precedence.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> SQL Server <i><instance></instance></i>.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	
	3. Click Advanced and click Startup tab.	
	4. Select the Change Priority checkbox.	
	5. Enter a priority number - 0 is the highest priority and 999 is the lowest priority.	
	6. Select the Start up in suspended State check box to start the job in a suspended state.	
	7. Click OK .	
Alerts	This option enables users or user groups to get automatic notification on the status of the data protection job. Follow the steps given below to set up the criteria to raise notifications/alerts:	Refer to Alerts.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client></i> SQL Server <i><instance></instance></i>.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	
	3. Click Advanced and select the Alert tab.	
	4. Click Add Alert.	

	5. From the Add Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next .	
	6. Select the required notification types and click Next .	
	7. Select the recipients and click Next .	
	8. Click Finish .	
	9. Click OK .	
Command Line Backups	Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts.	Refer to Command Line Interface.
	You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save As Script option.	
CommCell Readiness Report	The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, MediaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Refer to CommCell Readiness Report.
	1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
	2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness.	
	3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button.	
	 In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. 	
	5. Select the client from the Exclude list.	
	6. Click the Include > button.	
	7. Click OK .	
	8. Click the MediaAgent tab.	
	9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox.	
	10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list.	
	11 Click Include >	
	12 Click Run	
	The generated report is displayed	
Backup Job Summary	The Backup Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the backup jobs that	Refer to Backup Job Summary
Report	are run in last 24 hrs for a specific subclient. You can get information such as status, time, data size etc. for each backup job. It is useful to run this report after performing the backup. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Report.
	1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
	2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary.	
	3. Click Data Management on the General tab in the right pane.	
	4. Select the Computers tab.	
	5. Click Subclient and select the Edit tab.	
	6. Navigate to Client Computers <client> File System Backup Set Subclient.</client>	
	7. Click Run	
Data Path Options	Data Protection operations use a default Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and Drive as the Data Path. You can use this option to change the data path if the default data path is not available. Follow the steps given below to change the default data path:	Refer Change Data Path.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> SQL Server </client> < Instance> .	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	
	3. Click Advanced and select the Data Path tab.	
	4. Select the MediaAgent and Library.	
	5. Select the Drive Pool and Drive for optical and tape libraries.	
	6. Click OK .	
Start New Media	The Start New Media option enables you to start the data protection operation on a new media. This feature provides control over where the data physically resides. Use the following steps to start the data protection operation on a new media:	Refer to Start New Media.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> SQL Server <instance>.</instance></client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	

	3. Click Advanced and select the Media tab.	
	4. Select the Start New Media check box.	
	5. Click OK .	
Mark Media Full on Success	This option marks the media as full, two minutes after the successful completion of the data protection job. This option prevents another job from writing to this media. Follow the steps given below:	Refer to Export Media.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> SQL Server </client> < <i>Instance</i> >.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	
	3. Click Advanced and select Media tab.	
	4. Select the Mark Media Full on Success check box.	
	5. Click OK .	
Allow other Schedules to use Media Set	The Allow Other Schedules to use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or schedule policy and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents other jobs from writing to the same set of media.	Refer to Creating an Exportable Media Set.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> SQL Server </client> < <i>Instance</i> >.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	
	3. Click Advanced and select the Media tab.	
	4. Select the Allow Other Schedules To Use Media Set check box.	
	5. Click OK .	
Extended Data Retention	This option allows you to extend the expiration date of a specific job. This will override the default retention set at the corresponding storage policy copy. Follow the steps given below to extend the expiration date:	Refer to Extended Retention Rules.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> SQL Server <instance>.</instance></client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	
	3. Click Advanced and select the Media tab.	
	4. Select one of the following options:	
	• Infinite - Select this option to extend the expiration date by infinite number of days	
	 Number of day - Select this option to specify the number of days to extend the expiration date and then enter the number of days. 	
	5. Click OK .	
Vault Tracker	This feature provides the facility to manage media that is removed from a library and stored in offsite locations. Depending on your VaultTracker setup, select the required options. Use the following steps to access and select the VaultTracker options.	Refer to VaultTracker or VaultTracker Enterprise.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> SQL Server </client> < <i>Instance</i> >.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient in the right pane and click Backup .	
	3. Click Advanced and select the VaultTracking tab.	
	4. Select the required options.	
	5. Click OK .	

Browse Data – SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Understanding the Browse Window

Browsing Data

Latest Data Data Before a Specified Time Data Between a Specified Time

Browse from Copies

List Media

UNDERSTANDING THE BROWSE WINDOW

Browse provides an easy-to-use convenience to search and restore data.

You can open the browse window from client, agent, instance or subclient level. The sub levels displayed in the browse window is based on where you start the browse operation.

SELECTING OBJECTS FROM THE BROWSE WINDOW FOR RESTORE

The browse window displays objects and consists of two parts:

- The left pane displays the object tree at the selected level.
- The right pane displays the contents of the selected object.

Note that the window displays only the data that was obtained by a backup. Data that is excluded by a filter, or data which did not exist as of the specified browse time does not appear in the window.

Selections follow these rules:

- All selections are recursive.
- Clicking a box again causes the selection to be cleared.
- If you select an object in the left pane, then all of its contents are selected.
- You can select a specific object in the right pane.

Selection status is revealed by the selection icons as follows:

	Indicates that the object is not selected for restoration.
	Indicates that a portion of the object is selected for restoration. i.e., only some of the child object(s) within the selected object.
%	Indicates that the entire object, including all of its child objects, are selected for restoration.

BROWSING DATA

The option to browse the backup data provides the facility to view and restore the data that was backed up. The following sections explain how to browse the backup data.

LATEST DATA

By default, you can browse the latest backup data.

Follow the steps given below to view the latest data backed up by a backup set:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the **<Instance>** and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.

The latest data backed up by all the subclients is displayed in the **Client Browse** tab.



DATA BEFORE A SPECIFIED TIME

Follow the steps given below to browse the data backed up before specified time:

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL

RELATED TOPICS

Scheduling

Provides comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

Job Management

Provides comprehensive information on managing jobs.



Server.

- 2. Right-click the instance and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Select Specify Browse Time.
- 4. Select a date and time to Browse Data Before it.
- 5. Click **OK**.

DATA BETWEEN A SPECIFIED TIME

Follow the steps given below to browse data between specified time:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | File System
- 2. Right-click a Backup Set and click All Tasks | Browse/Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Select Specify Browse Time.
- 4. Select a date and time to Browse Data Before it.
- 5. Click Advanced.
- 6. In the Advanced Browse Options dialog box, select Exclude Data Before.
- 7. Select the date and time to exclude the data before it from the browse operation.
- 8. Click OK in the Advanced Browse Options dialog box .
- 9. Click **OK** in the **Browse Options** dialog box.

BROWSE FROM COPIES

By default, when a browse operation is requested, the software attempts to browse from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data that you want to browse was already pruned from the primary copy, the software searches the other copies of the storage policy, starting from the copy with the lowest copy precedence to a copy with the highest copy precedence.

This feature is useful in the following conditions:

- The media containing protected data for a particular copy has been removed from the storage library, you can choose to browse from a copy whose media are inside the library.
- Allows browsing from a copy that accesses faster disk media rather than slower tape media.
- When media drives used by a particular copy are busy with another operation, this helps in browsing from a different copy to avoid resource conflicts.
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the instance and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. From the Browse Options dialog box, click Advanced.
- 4. In the Advanced Browse Options dialog box select the Browse from copy precedence option.

If you specify a copy precedence number for a browse operation, the software searches only the storage policy copy with that precedence number in all storage policies used for securing the data. If data does not exist in the specified copy, the browse operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy.

- 5. Specify the precedence number in Copy Precedence.
- 6. Click OK in the Advanced Browse Options dialog box .
- 7. Click **OK** in the **Browse Options** dialog box.

LIST MEDIA

List media option is useful to predict media required to restore the index required to browse data. This is useful when the index is not available in the index cache.

The following section describes how to perform this operation.

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client***> | SQL Server**.







- 2. Right-click the instance and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- From the Browse Options dialog box, if required, select the following options:
 Click Browse the Latest Data to list media associated with the most recent data protection cycle.
 - Click Specify Browse Time to list media associated with data protection operations up to the specified date and time range. Use the Browse Data Before box to specify the end date and time.
 - Click Advanced and then click Exclude Data Before and then select the date and time from which you wish to list media associated with data protection operations.

4. Click List Media.

- 5. From the List Media dialog box, select the media you wish to recall and click Recall Media.
- 6. From the **Recall Media** dialog box General tab, select the following:
- The time until which the media would be retained in the library for read operations.
 - A reason for recalling the media.
- 7. From the **Destination** tab, configure the following destination options:
 - Click the **Track Transit** option and select the transit location from the list, to track the transit information.
 - $\circ~$ Select the desired Destination.
 - If desired, select the Move Media to Overwrite Protection Pool option along with the desired pool to which the media will be moved.
 - Select Acknowledge the action as Reached Destination automatically if desired.

8. Click OK.

The appropriate media is listed in the Media dialog box.



Replication Using Warm Database Restore

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Replication Using Warm Database Restore

Pre-Requisites Setting Up the Standby Server Using the SQL Server Database(s) on the Hot Standby Server Performing Disaster Recovery Operations for the Primary SQL Server Database(s)

REPLICATION USING WARM DATABASE RESTORE

This type of restore is also called Hot Server Restore. You can keep up-to-date copies of the production databases on alternate servers, thus minimizing down time in cases where the production database server has failed.

The advantages of Warm Database Restore over a traditional restore scenario is that the database is always kept in a near ready state. In the case of disaster, users do not need to wait for the time it would take to restore the database in its entirety. Only the latest backup may need to be applied to the target database before turning the application over to use it.

PRE-REQUISITES

Review the following requirements before performing a Warm Database Restore:

- The primary SQL server and hot standby server must be clients of the same CommServe and have the SQL Server iDataAgent installed on each computer.
- The primary SQL server must be able to communicate with the hot standby server with one of the following network configurations:
- o Local Area Network (LAN) in the same domain
- $\circ~$ Local Area Network (LAN) in a different domain
- Wide Area Network (WAN)
- Two licenses for SQL Server *i*DataAgent is required.

SETTING UP THE STANDBY SERVER

Use the following steps to setup the standby server:

- 1. Install the Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent on the hot standby server computer.
- 2. Perform a full backup of the SQL Server databases on the primary server.
- 3. Perform a restore of the last full backup of the primary database, as well as any differential or transaction log backups completed since the database's last full backup.
- 4. Schedule routine differential or transaction log backups of the SQL Server databases on the primary server.
- 5. Schedule routine restore operations of the Latest Backup Data in the Standby Server.
 - Matching the restore schedule with a backup schedule on the source database automatically keeps the restored databases in the Standby Server up-todate.
 - If you wish to include only the transaction log backups completed since the last restore operation, you must select the Apply Log Backups Only
 option after selecting Latest Backup Data in the SQL Restore Options dialog box. The restore operation will then skip any full backup jobs
 completed since the last restore operation.

If you do not select the **Apply Log Backups Only** option and the database already exists, all backup jobs completed since the last restore operation will automatically be restored.

If you do not select the **Apply Log Backups Only** option and the database does not already exist, the software will automatically perform a full restore of the database.

USING THE SQL SERVER DATABASE(S) ON THE HOT STANDBY SERVER

In the event of a failure in the primary server you can use the hot standby server by bringing the databases online. Use the following steps to bring the database online.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the instance and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click OK
- In the Browse window, select the databases that you want to recover in the right pane and click Recover All Selected.

- 5. Click Recover Only.
- 6. Click **OK**.

You can also bring the databases online by recovering the database from the **SQL Server Enterprise Manager**.

No further restore operations may be performed to the hot standby server's databases once the databases have been recovered.

If you wish to perform more restore operations to the hot standby server after recovering the databases, you must setup the hot standby server once again.

SQL Restore Options		
General 3ob Initiation		
Ceneral Destination Server: HAPPY01 Source Server: HAPPY01 Database Name: Resources Database State: Restoring Resources Exercise Destabase State: Restoring		
Database Restore Step Restore Transaction Log Marks Patial Restore Latest Backup Data Apply Log backups only Skip Full Backup		
Restore Time and Time zone Restore Time: Tuesday, April 26, 2011 1:26:30 PM FULL Time Zone: (dMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)		
Recovery Types and UndoPath Recovery Oxercovery Ostand by Undo File Path Rectore Options		
Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files Leave Database in DBO use only state Preserve Registration Settings Keep Change Data Capture		
2 Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help		

PERFORMING DISASTER RECOVERY OPERATIONS FOR THE PRIMARY SQL SERVER DATABASE(S)

If the primary server's databases is lost, you can restore the databases from the hot standby server's databases by performing the appropriate in-place restore operation.

If the entire primary server is lost, you must perform a full system restore.

Once the full system restore has completed, you will need to set up the hot standby server again by repeating the steps outlined in this procedure.

Advanced Restore - SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Restoring a Database	Command Line Restores
Recovering a Database	Log on to the CommServe
Recover a Database in the Offline State	Perform the Restore
Recover a Database in the Standby State	Generate the Command Line Script from the CommCell Console
Recover one or more Databases in the Online State	
Restoring System Databases	
Restoring Files or Filegroups	
Restore One or More Files or Filegroups	
Restore a Database using File/Filegroup Level	
Performing Partial Restore of a Database	
Restoring SQL Server Transaction Logs (Step Restore)	
Applying Log Backups	
Restoring SQL Databases to a Point in Time	
Restoring Only the Logs	
Restoring SQL Server Databases to a Transaction Mark	
Restoring a Database With Restricted Access	
Preserving Replication Settings	
Keeping Change Data Capture (For SQL Server 2008 and Above)	
Increasing the VDI Timeout	
Performing an Out-of-Place Restore	
Copying a Database to a Different Location	
Copying a Database to a Different SQL Server Instance	
Moving a Database	
Setting Up Pre-Post Processes	
Setting Up a Pre/Post Process to Run After Each Attempt	
Managing Restore Jobs	
Restarting Jobs	
Additional Postara Ontiona	
Restoring a Database With Restricted Access Preserving Replication Settings Keeping Change Data Capture (For SQL Server 2008 and Above) Increasing the VDI Timeout Performing an Out-of-Place Restore Copying a Database to a Different Location Copying a Database to a Different SQL Server Instance Moving a Database Moving a Database Back to the Original Location After a Move Scheduling a Restore Setting Up Pre-Post Processes Setting Up a Pre/Post Process to Run After Each Attempt Managing Restore Jobs Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs Additional Restore Options	

RESTORING A DATABASE

By default, a database is restored in the same location from where it was backed up and the existing database files are overwritten. This restore leaves the database in an online state. Follow the steps given below to restore a database:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the *<Instance>* and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a non-system database you want to restore and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files.
- 6. Click **OK** to start the restore.

General Job Initiation	SQL Restore Options			X
General Gestendation Server: HAPPY01 Source Server: HAPPY01 Database time: Resources Database State: Normal Restore Types O Database Restore Stop Restore Database State: Normal Restore Types O Database Restore Stop Restore Perint-Intere Transaction Log Mains Perint Restore Time and Time core Restore Time and UndePath Restore Time and UndePath Restore Time and UndePath Restore Restore (Off Fig Path Restore Restore Restore) Stand by Undo Time Path Restore Restore Restore database or files Restore Coloris Persearve Repictation Settings Restore Coloris Restore Coloris Restore Coloris Restore Coloris Restore Repictation Settings Resto	General Job Initiation			
Destination Server: H48PY01 Succe Server: H48PY01 Database Name: Resources Database Name: Resources Database Name: Resources Database Restore Stap Restore Resource Only Paint-in-time Transaction Log Marks Restore Time and Time zone Restore Obsone Restore Database In BO use only state Restore Obsone Restore Ob	General			
Source Server: HAPPY01 Database Name: Resources Database State: Normal Restore Types © Database Restore Step Restore Resource Only © Database Restore Step Restore Partial Restore © Database Restore Transaction Log Marks Partial Restore © database Restore Transaction Log Marks © Restore Time: Transaction Log Marks @ Step Full Backup Restore Time: Transaction Log Marks @ Restore Time: Transactio	Destination Server:	HAPPY01		~
Database Name: Resources Database State: Normal Restore Types	Source Server:	HAPPY01		
Database State: Normal Pleatore Types O batabase Restore Step Restore Rescover Only Database Restore Step Restore Partial Restore Pleator Types Transaction Log Marks Partial Restore Pleator Time and Time zone Restore Time and Time zone Step Full Backup Restore Time and Time zone: (GRT 06:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada) V Restore Types and UndsPab V Undo Fire Pab: Downee Restore Cybions 1 Preserve Repictation Sattings Restore Time Downee Restore Repictation Sattings Keep Change Data Capture Restore Time Downee	Database Name:	Resources		
Petstore Types ① batabase Restore ③ Stap Restore ① Partial Restore ① Latest Backup Data Apply Log backups only ③ Stap Full Backup Partial Restore ① Latest Backup Data Apply Log backups only ③ Stap Full Backup Restore Time and Time zone Restore Time: ① Latest Backup Data Apply Log backups only ③ Stap Full Backup Restore Time: ① Latest Backup, April 25, 2011 1:26:30 PM FULL ③ Restore Time: ① Canada ③ Restore Time: ① Canada ③ Petstore Time: ① Canada ③ Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① Petstore ① ①	Database State:	Normal		
Control Detabase Restore Control Detabase	Restore Types			
Parti-In-time Partial Restore Backup Data Apply Log backups only Step Charles Restore Time and Time zone Restore Colors Resto	 Database Restore 	Step Restore	O Recover Only	
Carlos Cobors Carlo	Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks	Partial Restore	
Restore Time and Time zone Restore Time: Lussday, April 20, 2011 1:20:30 PM FLUL Time Zone: (341-05:00) Extern Time (US & Canada) Recovery Types and UndeFlath Image: Concern Concer	🗌 Latest Backup Da	ta Apply Log backups only	Skip Full Backup	
Restore Time: Tuesday, April 26, 2011 1:26:30 PM FLLL Image: Constraint of the constraint of th	Restore Time and Time a	one		
Time Zone: (GHT-GS-GD) Eastern Time (US & Canada) Recovery Types and UndePath Recovery Types and UndePath Recovery O Nareovery O Stand by Undo File Path: Restore Cataloge in DEO use only state Preserve Repication Settings Keep Change Data Cepture Report Repication Settings Keep Change Data Cepture Restore Cataloge in Case A Stringt Restore Repication Settings Keep Change Data Cepture Restore Case A Stringt Restore C	Restore Time: Tu	esday, April 26, 2011 1:26:30 PM FI	uu	~
Recovery Types and UndsPath Recovery Oxercovery Oxerd by Undo File Path: Rectore Options Piescree Replication Settings Recover Replication Settings Keep Change Data Capture Preserve Replication Settings Keep Change Data Capture Keep Change Data Capture Keep Change Data Capture Preserve Replication Settings Keep Change Data Capture	Time Zone: (G	MT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Cana	ida)	~
Restore Options 1 Pirconditionally overwrite existing database or field evere Database in IRO use only state Preserve Repication Sattings evere Catabase in Settings Keep Change Data Cature 2 evere Concert	Recovery Types and UndePath Recovery O Norecovery O Stand by Under Fire Path			
Concern and the set of the s	Restore Options			
2 Concell Advanced @Swe As Strint Help	C Inconditionally overwrite existing diabase or files Leave Database in D60 use only state Preserve Repitation Settings Keep Charone Data Cature			
		2 R OK Cancel	Advanced 🛛 🚱 Save As So	ript Help

RECOVERING A DATABASE

By default, a database is left in the online state after a restore. However, you might need to change the state of the database depending on your needs (e.g., if you want to make the database inaccessible to the users). By recovering a database, you can select the state in which the database is to be left. Follow the steps given below to recover a database:

RECOVER A DATABASE IN THE OFFLINE STATE

If you want the database to be offline after the restore, follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the *Instance* and then click **All Tasks** | **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select the database to be recovered and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click Norecovery.
- 6. Click Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files.
- 7. Click **OK**.



RECOVER A DATABASE IN THE STANDBY STATE

If you want the database to be in a read-only state after the restore, follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the *Instance* and then click **All Tasks** | **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select the database to be recovered and click

Recover All Selected.

5. Click **Stand by**.

Specify the path to the undo file or click **Browse** to locate the file.

- 6. Click Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files.
- 7. Click **OK**.

SQL Restore Options			×
General Job Initiation			
General			
Destination Server:	HAPPY01	~	
Source Server:	HAPPY01		
Database Name:	Resources		
Database State:	Normal		
Restore Types			51
 Database Restor 	e 🔿 Step Restore	O Recover Only	
Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks	Partial Restore	
Latest Backup Da	ata Apply Log backups only	Skip Full Backup	
Restore Time and Time :	zone		51
Restore Time: T	uesday, April 26, 2011 1:26:30 PM FU		
Time Zone: (0	GMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Cana	da) 🗸	
Recovery Types and Un	ndoPath		ЪL
O Recovery	Norecovery Stand by		
2 Undo File Path:		Browce	
			-
3			
Unconditionally o	verwrite existing database or nies		
Leave Database	in DBO use only state		
Verserve Replica	tion Settings		
Change Da	ka Capture		
	4 BOK Cancel	Advanced 🚱 Save As Script Hel	p

RECOVER ONE OR MORE DATABASES IN THE ONLINE STATE

If you have a database in the offline or standby state and you want to bring the database back to the online state, follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the **<Instance>** and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- In the right pane of the Browse window, select the databases you want to recover and click Recover All Selected.
- 5. Click Recover Only.
- 6. Click **OK**.



RESTORING SYSTEM DATABASES

System databases are essential for the operation of the SQL server instance. If you need to restore the SQL Server in the event of a system failure, the system databases (master, msdb and model) must be backed up. The tempdb does not get backed up as it is re-created by the SQL Server every time the server is started.

By default, system databases are restored in the same location from where they were backed up and their data files are overwritten. Follow the steps given below to restore the system databases:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the instance, point to All Tasks, and then click Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the left pane of the **Browse** window, navigate to the instance node.
- 5. Select the system databases (master, msdb, and model) in the right pane and click

Recover All Selected.

If you choose to restore the system databases individually, it is recommended to follow this order: master, msdb, model.

- 6. Click Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files.
- 7. Click **OK** to start the restore.
- 8. Click **Yes**. The system stops and restarts the SQL Server service in single-user mode.



RESTORING FILES OR FILEGROUPS

By default, files or filegroups are restored in the same location from where they were backed up. File/Filegroup restores give you the ability to bring back the files that have been damaged in the event of a failure. You can restore specific files and filegroups from both:

- database backups
- file and filegroup backups

During a File/Filegroup restore job, the system restores the latest full and differential backups and then uses the transaction log backups up to the specified restore time. Hence, transaction logs are needed to successfully restore files or filegroups as it determines the end time of the restore. For more information, see Transaction Log Backups.

File/Filegroup restores are commonly used for situations in which individual data files on a database are damaged.

RESTORE ONE OR MORE FILES OR FILEGROUPS

For a single data file, the file/file group restore chain consists of the most recent full backup, the most recent differential (if any), and all subsequent transaction log backups that occurred prior to the restore time. However, for multiple files or file groups, the same rules apply for each data file, and the log backups to be restored will be determined by the file requiring the oldest log.

Follow the steps below to restore one or more files or filegroups from a database:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click File/File Group and then click OK.
- 4. In the left pane of the Browse window, navigate to the database that contains the files or filegroups you want to restore.
- 5. Select the files or filegroups you want to restore in the right pane and click **Recover** All Selected.
- 6. Click Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files.
- 7. Click **OK** to start the restore.



RESTORE A DATABASE USING FILE/FILEGROUP LEVEL

You can restore a database in its entirety by restoring all the filegroups within the database. Follow the steps below to restore the entire database at the File/filegroup level:

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.

- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click File/File Group and then click OK.
- In the right pane of the Browse window, select the database you want to restore. Multiple databases cannot be restored at the filegroup level.
- 5. Click **Recover All Selected**.
- 6. Click Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files.
- 7. Click **OK** to start the restore.

PERFORMING PARTIAL (PIECEMEAL) RESTORE OF A DATABASE

If the size of a filegroup in a database is large, the restore operation may take considerable time. In such case, you can restore the database in stages.

Partial restores also known as Piecemeal Restore in SQL Server versions 2005 and later allows you to restore a database in stages.

Follow the steps given below to restore a database in stages at filegroup level:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click File/File Group and then click OK.
- 4. In the left pane of the Browse window, navigate to the database that contains the filegroups you want to restore.
- 5. Select the filegroups you want to restore in the right pane and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 6. Select the Partial Restore check box.
- 7. Click **OK** to start the restore.
- 8. Perform the partial restore of all remaining filegroups one by one to restore the entire database.

After performing a partial (piecemeal) restore job, the next backup job for that database is automatically converted to a full backup.

L Restore Option	
eral Job Initiation	
General	
	HARRYOUCCOMMINALIT
Destination Server:	HAPPYD1/COMMVALIT
Database Name	Budget
File List:	hudrateer
	ougetee.
Database State:	
Restore Types	
 Database Resto 	re 🔿 Step Restore 🔷 Recover Only
Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks
L start Parkup (Skip Full Backup
	Cubbi con reaction
Restore time and time	200e
Restore Time:	Inu 04/28/2011 V US : 13 : 19 MM
Time Zone:	(GMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Recovery Types and U	ndoPath
Recovery	Norecovery Stand by
Lindo Elle Path:	
	Libise
Restore Options	
Unconditionally	overwrite existing database or files
Leave Database	In DBO use only state
Preserve Replic	ation Settings
Keep Change D	sta Capture

RESTORING SQL SERVER TRANSACTION LOGS (STEP RESTORE)

When you want to restore an event in the database but do not know the exact time of the event, you can first restore the database in the standby state and apply transaction logs to the database. The Step Restore enables you to append the logs to such a database. (Both Incremental or Transaction Log backups can be applied.) Use the following procedure to apply the log backups one by one to scan through the changes that have been committed between each log backup. This way you can avoid performing multiple full restores when you are not sure of the point of restore required. Step Restores can be performed on individual databases.

Follow the steps given below to apply the logs to a database in the standby state:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the *<Instance>* and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 11. In the right pane of the Browse window, select the database that is already restored in the standby state and click **Recover All Selected**.
- Select the **Destination Server**. The destination Server must be different than source server.
- 13. Select Step Restore.



- 14. Select a Log backup from the Restore Time list.
- 15. Select the Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files check box.
- 16. Click **OK** to start the log restore.

If required, you can apply logs from other Log backups by selecting a different Log backup from the Restore Time list.



APPLYING LOG BACKUPS

This option enables you to apply all the latest transaction logs to a hot standby sever. The hot standby server is the server where you can restore a latest backup data periodically. Follow the steps given below to restore only the logs that are backed on a specific time:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client***> | SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the *Instance* and then click **All Tasks** | **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database that is already restored in the standby state and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select the **Destination Server**. Select the hot standby server.
- 6. Select the Latest Backup Data check box.
- 7. Select the Apply Log backups only check box.
- 8. Select the time and a Log backup from the Restore Time list.
- 9. Click **OK** to start the log restore.

The Transaction Logs, backed up on the selected time will be restored and applied to the database.



RESTORING SQL DATABASES TO A POINT IN TIME

If any undesired transaction occurs in the database, you can revert the database to a state just before the transaction. The point in time option enables you to restore the database to a specific point-in-time. This option is useful in the following scenarios:

- If any undesired transaction occurs in the database, you can revert the database to a state just before the transaction.
- If a database fails, you can restore to the state just before the point of failure.
- You can restore multiple databases to a consistent time. This will be useful for the absolute synchronization of the databases.

Before performing the point-in-time restore of a database, ensure that transaction logs for the database are backed up. Follow the steps given below to restore a database(s) to a point in time:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.

- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select one or more databases and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select the **Point-in-Time** check box.
- 6. From the **Restore Time** lists, select the date and the time.
- 7. Select the Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files check box.
- 8. Click **OK** to start the restore.
- The database(s) will be restored to the selected date and time.

When you perform a point-in-time restore for a database, the next scheduled backup for that database will automatically convert to a Full backup.

SQL Restore Options	E	
General Job Initiation		
General		
Destination Server:	HAPPY01	
Source Server:	HAPPY01	
Database Name:	model_test	
Database State:	Normal	
Restore Types		
 Database Restor 	e O Step Restore	
Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks	
Latest Backup Da	ta Apply Log backups only	
Restore Time and Time a	2006	
Restore Time:	nu 04/28/2011 T 11 : 02 : 59 AM	
Time Zone:	iMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	
Recovery Types and Un	doPath	
Recovery	Norecovery 🔘 Stand by	
Undo File Path:	Rrowse	
Restore Options		
Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files		
Leave Database in DBO use only state		
Veen Change Data Carburg		
Change Da	a calinia	
u		
	Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help	

RESTORING ONLY THE LOGS

If you are using any third-party software to backup and restore the databases, you can use SQL Server *i*DataAgent to restore only the logs. The database for which you are restoring logs must be in the standby state. Follow the steps given below to restore logs for a database:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the **<Instance>** and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database that is already restored in the standby state and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select the **Destination Server**. Select the server and instance in which the restored database resides in the standby state.
- 6. Select the **Point-in-Time** check box.
- 7. Select the Skip FULL Backup check box.
- 8. Specify the Restore Time.
- 9. Click **OK** to start the log restore.

The most recent log backup before the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Restore Time}}$ will be restored and applied to the database.

SQL Restore Options		×	
General Job Initiation			
General		^	
Destination Server:	BLISS		
Source Server:	BLISS		
Database Name:	Student_Master		
Database State:	Normal		
Restore Types			
 Database Restor 	e Step Restore O Recover Only		
Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks		
🗌 Latest Backup Da	ata Apply Log backups only		
Restore Time and Time	zone		
Restore Time:	hu 04/28/2011 💌 03 : 35 : 00 PM 📩	=	
Time Zone: (GMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)		
Recovery Types and Ur	idoPath		
Recovery	Norecovery 🔿 Stand by		
Undo File Path:	Browse		
Restore Options			
Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files			
Leave Database in DBO use only state			
Preserve Replica	tion Settings		
Keep Change Da	ta Capture		
		~	
	Cancel Advanced 🚱 Save As Script Hel	•	

RESTORING SQL SERVER DATABASES TO A TRANSACTION MARK

You can restore directly to the marked transaction or a point before the transaction if the Transaction logs of the database has transaction marks.

This can be useful in situations where a transaction has caused undesirable results on a database and you need to go back to the point before that occurred.

Before performing the restore, ensure that transaction logs are backed up for the database that you want to restore to a transaction mark.

Follow the steps given below to restore a database(s) to a transaction mark:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click **OK**.

4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database that is already restored in the standby state.

You can select multiple databases. However, the transaction marks must be common to all the selected databases.

- 5. Click Recover All Selected.
- 6. Select the Transaction Marks check box.
- 7. Select the transaction mark from the Restore Time list.
- 8. Select Stop at Mark or Stop Before Mark.

If you select **Stop at Mark** the database will be restored to the selected transaction mark. If you select **Stop Before Mark**, the database will be recovered to a previous transaction mark.

9. Click **OK** to start the restore.

After performing a transaction mark restore job, the next backup job for that database is automatically converted to a full backup.

SQL Restore Options		
General 3ob Initiation		
General Destination Server: HAPPY01(COMMVALLT		
Source Server: HAPPYO1(COMMVAULT Database Name: Student, Master Database State: Normal		
Restore Types Database Restore Step Restore Recover Only		
Point-in-time Transaction Log Marks Partial Restore Latest Backup Data Apply Log backups only Skip Full Backup		
Restore Time and Time zone Restore Time: Thursday, April 28, 2011 2:39:59 PM TestTrans7		
Recovery Types and UndoPath		
Recovery Ostand by Undo File Path: Browse		
Linconditionally overwrite existing database or files Linconditionally overwrite existing database or files		
Preserve Replication Settings Keep Change Data Capture		
B [®] OK Cancel Advanced B Save As Script Help		

RESTORING A DATABASE WITH RESTRICTED ACCESS

This option is used to restore the database in a state where only the owner of the database can access the database.

Follow the steps given below to restore the database for the Database Owner (DBO_ONLY state):

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select the Leave Database in DBO use only state check box.
- 6. Select the Unconditionally overwrite existing database or files check box.
- 7. Click **OK** to start the restore.

After the database is restored, only the owner of the database can access the database.



PRESERVING REPLICATION SETTINGS

You can preserve all the replication settings of a published database when you perform an out-of-place restore of a database. This options is used to restore backups of replicated databases. Only full backups are supported with this option, so make sure that you have performed at least one Full backup before restoring the database with replication settings. Follow the steps given below to preserve the replication settings:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select a SQL Server and instance from the **Destination Server** list.
- 6. Ensure that Recovery option is selected from the Recovery Types.

7. Select the Preserve Replication Settings check box.

Selection of Preserve Replication Settings option is not available in Microsoft SQL Server 2005.

- 8. Click Advanced and select the Options tab.
 - Change the path of the database and log files under the **Physical Path** column.
 Click **OK**.
- 9. Click **OK** to start the restore.

After the restore has completed, all the replication settings of the database are available on the destination server.

If the publication database is restored, ensure that the replication settings of the $\tt master$ and $\tt msdb$ databases on the Distributor and Subscriber servers are consistent with the publication database. For more information, see Backing Up and Restoring Replication Databases.

SQL Restore Options		×	
General Job Initiation			
Destination Server:	BLIS5	^	
Source Server:	HAPPY01		
Database Name:	Budget		
Database State:	NOTEXIST		
Restore Types			
 Database Restor 	e Step Restore Recover Only		
Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks		
Latest Backup Da	ta 🔄 Apply Log backups only 📄 Skip Full Backup		
Restore Time and Time a	zone		
Restore Time: Th	hursday, April 28, 2011 11:25:49 PM FULL		
Time Zone: (0	GMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	Ξ	
Recovery Types and UndePath			
<			
	Cancel Advanced 📴 Save As Script Help		

KEEPING CHANGE DATA CAPTURE (FOR SQL SERVER 2008 AND ABOVE)

The SQL Server 2008 has an option to capture the changed data. If you have enabled this option, the changed data (insert, update, and delete) is captured and applied to SQL tables. The details of the changes are available in an easily applicable relational format. You can restore the captured changes and apply them to the restored database. You cannot restore the captured changes if you are using VSS enabled backup for restore.

Follow the steps given below to restore the captured data:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the *Instance* and then click **All Tasks** | **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select the Keep Change Data Capture check box.
- 6. Click **OK** to start the restore.

After the restore has completed, all the data changes are available and applied to the restored database.



INCREASING THE VDI TIMEOUT

The VDI (Virtual Device Interface) is an API used to communicate with the SQL Server during all backup and restore operation. When restoring a database, the VDI timeout represents the time the system must wait for the SQL server to become ready to accept data into the database. If any databases are dropped from the SQL Server after the backup, the database file(s) do not exist on the sever. Before starting the restore operation, these files will be created automatically on the SQL Server. The time required to create the file(s) will be the same as when you first created the database or altered the database and added the file (s).

By default, the system will wait 50 minutes (10 retries of five minutes each) for the SQL server to respond to a VDI command before giving up. If the SQL server takes longer then this timeout value, the system assumes that the command failed, and it aborts the restore operation.

Follow the steps given below to increase the VDI Timeout for a SQL Server instance.

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |SQL

Server

- 2. Right-click the **<Instance>** and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Enter the **VDT Timeout**.
- 4. Click **OK**.

Properties of	SQL Server:HAPPY01\COMMVAULT
General Accounts	Security
-	
Client Name:	happy01
iDataAgent:	SQL Server
Instance Name:	HAPPY01
Version:	10.0.2531
Server Type:	DataBase Engine
VDI Timeout:	300 Seconds
Use VSS	
Description	
	Close Help

PERFORMING AN OUT-OF-PLACE RESTORE

Use one of the methods below to restore a SQL database to a different location.

COPYING A DATABASE TO A DIFFERENT LOCATION

Follow the steps below to restore a database to a different location on the same destination server:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select the databases you want to restore and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click Advanced.
- 6. Click the **Options** tab.
- 7. Rename the database under the **Database** column and change the path of the database and log files under the **Physical Path** column.
 - If there are many files, use the **Find & Replace** option to enter the new destination path for all of them at once.
 - If the database file path is changed without changing the database name, the existing database will be overwritten and will point to the new location.
- 8. Click **OK**.
- 9. Click **OK** to start the restore.

COPYING A DATABASE TO A DIFFERENT SQL SERVER INSTANCE

By default, when restoring to a different SQL Server instance, a database is restored to the same location in the destination server. Follow the steps below to restore a database to a different destination server.

System databases cannot be restored to a different server as they would overwrite the existing system databases in the destination server.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** | <**Client>** | **SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the <Instance> and then click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select the databases you want to restore and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select the **Destination Server**.

If the same path cannot be used for any reason (e.g., the destination server does not have the corresponding path), click **Advanced**. From the **Options** tab, rename the database and change the path of the data files.



6. Click **OK** to start the restore.



MOVING A DATABASE

You can restore the database to a different location without changing its name. You cannot move a system database to a different location.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the **<Instance>** and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click Advanced.
- 6. Select the Options tab.
- 7. Change the path of the database and log files under the Physical Path column.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Click **OK** to start the restore.

MOVING A DATABASE BACK TO THE ORIGINAL LOCATION AFTER A MOVE

If you perform a restore operation to move the database back to its original location, the database files will not be moved back as the database already exists on the server. The restore job will only check the database name and will restore the database on top of the same database regardless of its location. To move the database files back to the original location, use one of the following workarounds:

- Detach and re-attach the database.
- Perform a full backup of the database before moving the database back to its original location.
- Drop the database from the SQL Server instance and perform a restore with the default values.

COMMAND LINE RESTORES

You can perform restores of one of more databases from the command line interface.

Command line restores enable you to perform restore operations on multiple clients at the same time. It also allows you to reuse the command line scripts for additional restores.

When performing command line restores, note that backups taken from the CommCell Console can be restored using Command Line and vice versa. However, backups taken from a previous version of the CommCell Console can be restored only from the Command Line.

In order to run the restores from command line, you need an input xml file which contains the parameters for configuring the restore options. This input xml file can be obtained using one of the following ways:

- Download the input xml file template and save it on the computer from where the restore will be performed.
- Generate the input xml file from the CommCell Console and save it on the computer from where the restore will be performed.



LOG ON TO THE COMMSERVE

To run command line operations you must first login to the CommServe as follows:

• From Command prompt, navigate to <Software_Installation_Directory>/Base and run the following command:

qlogin -cs <commserve name> -u <user name>

• For example, to log on to CommServe 'server1' with username 'user1':

qlogin -cs server1 -u user1

PERFORM THE RESTORE

- 1. Download the restore_template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. Execute the saved xml script using qoperation execute command.

qoperation execute -af restore_template.xml -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx -toTimeValue yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss restoreSource xxxxx -database xxxxx

3. Verify the status of the job using the following command:

qlist job -j JOBID

4. Once the job completes, logout from the CommServe using the glogout command.

qlogout [-cs commserver] [-all] [-tf tokenfile] [-tk token] [-h]

OUT-OF-PLACE RESTORE ON THE SAME SQL SERVER

- 1. Download the out_of_Place_restore_template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. In the template locate the following section and edit it as per your setup:

<device>|DB1|#12!DB1_rename|#12!DB1|#12!E:\RestoreLocation\DB1.mdf|#12!C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10_50.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA\DB1.mdf</device>

<device>|DB1|#12!DB1_rename|#12!DB1_log|#12!E:\RestoreLocation\DB1_log.ldf|#12!C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10_50.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA\DB1_log.ldf</device>

Where:

- DB1 is the backed up database name.
- $\circ~$ DB1_Rename is the database name you want to provide for the restored database.
- $\circ~$ DB1 and DB1_log are the Logical Names of the backed up database.
- $\circ~$ E:\RestoreLocation is the destination path where you want to restore the database.
- o C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10_50.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA is the source location of the backed up database.
- o #12! separates the values in the command. Note that the separator may vary based on the database, for e.g., #18!
- 3. Execute the saved xml script using goperation execute command.

qoperation execute -af out_of_Place_restore_template.xml -clientName xxxxx -instanceName xxxxx -restoreSource xxxxx database xxxxx -toTimeValue yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss

4. Verify the status of the job using the following command:

qlist job -j JOBID

5. Once the job completes, logout from the CommServe using the qlogout command.

qlogout [-cs commserver] [-all] [-tf tokenfile] [-tk token] [-h]

OUT-OF-PLACE RESTORE ON A DIFFERENT SQL SERVER

- 1. Download the out_of_Place_restore_template.xml file and save it on the computer from where the command will be executed.
- 2. In the template locate the following section and edit it as per your setup:

<device>|DB1|#12!DB1_rename|#12!DB1|#12!E:\RestoreLocation\DB1.mdf|#12!C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10 50.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA\DB1.mdf</device>

<device>|DB1|#12!DB1_rename|#12!DB1_log|#12!E:\RestoreLocation\DB1_log.ldf|#12!C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10_50.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA\DB1_log.ldf</device>

Where:
- DB1 is the backed up database name.
- DB1_Rename is the database name you want to provide for the restored database.
- $\circ~$ DB1 and DB1_log are the Logical Names of the backed up database.
- E:\RestoreLocation is the destination path where you want to restore the database.
- o C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10_50.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA is the source location of the backed up database.
- o #12! separates the values in the command. Note that the separator may vary based on the database, for e.g., #18!

3. Execute the saved xml script using goperation execute command, for example:

qoperation execute -af out_of_Place_restore_template.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 restoreSource DB1 -database DB1 -toTimeValue yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss -destClient/clientName client2 destinationInstance/clientName client2 -destinationInstance/instanceName client2\instance2

4. Verify the status of the job using the following command:

qlist job -j JOBID

5. Once the job completes, logout from the CommServe using the qlogout command.

qlogout [-cs commserver] [-all] [-tf tokenfile] [-tk token] [-h]

EXAMPLES

Restoring from a Current Backup	<pre>qoperation execute -af restore_template.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1 \instance1 -restoreSource DB1 -database DB2 -toTimeValue 2011-11-28 15:40:00</pre>
Restoring Databases to a Point in Time (date and time)	qoperation execute -af pit_restore_template.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1 \instance1 -restoreSource DB1 -database DB2 -toTimeValue 2011-11-28 15:40:00
Restoring Database In Place in Standby Mode	qoperation execute -af standby_inplace_restore_template.xml -clientName client1 -instanceName client1\instance1 - restoreSource DB1 -database DB2 -toTimeValue 2011-11-28 15:40:00 -sqlRecoveryType STATE_STANDBY - renameFilesSuffix C:\UndoPath

GENERATE THE COMMAND LINE SCRIPT FROM THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

In addition to the parameters provided in the template xml file, if you want to include additional options for the restore, you can do so by selecting the required options from the CommCell Console and generate the command line xml script for the restore operation.

Follow the steps given below to generate a script which you can use to perform a restore from the command line interface:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the *Instance* and then click **All Tasks** | **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select the data that you want to restore and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Select the required restore options which you want to execute using the script.
- 6. Click Save as Script.



7. Enter the location where you want to save the script or click **Browse** and navigate to the location.

The script will be saved as a .xml file and a .bat file is created.

If a file with the same name already exists in the specified location, the .xml file will be created with a timestamp. However, the .bat file will overwrite the existing file.

Enter the username and password for the user account which you want to use to perform the restore. By default, the user account which you have used to login to CommCell console is used for performing the restore. However, if the user account does not have access to application and database, click **Use a different account**.

9. Click **OK**.

Save As Sc	ript 📃
Client ash	ai64 🔹
Path	Browse
Mode	
Asynch	ronous Synchronous
Specify use	r account to run the script the currently logged in user account Name: admin
🔘 Use	a different user account
User I	Name:
Passv	word:
Confi	rm Password:
	OK Cancel Help

SCHEDULING A RESTORE

Follow the steps given below to schedule a restore job:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | SQL Server.
 - Right-click the instance and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
 - Click OK.

 Image: Section (Section (S

- Select a database to restore.
 - Click Recover All Selected.
- 3. Select the required restore options. Click **OK**.

- 4. Click Job Initiation tab and click Schedule.
 - Click Configure.

- 5. Select the appropriate scheduling options. For example:
 - Click Weekly.
 - Check the days you want the run the restore job.
 - Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM
 - Click **OK** to close the Schedule Details dialog
 - Click **OK** to close the Restore Options dialog

The restore job will execute as per the schedule.

Control	
General	
Destination Server:	
Source Server:	HAPPED (COMMANDE)
Database List:	Budget
	Payroll
Restore Types	
	O Bernuer Only
 Database Restor 	re O Step Restore
Point-in-time	Transaction Log Marks
	Skip Full Backup
Latest backup us	ata Apply Log backups only
Restore Time and Time	zone
Restore Time:	fon 05/02/2011 🛛 💌 03 : 22 : 54 PM 🚽
Time Zone: (GMT-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Recovery Types and Un	ndoPath
0.0	0.0
Recovery	worecovery O Stand by
Undo File Path:	Browse
Pectore Options	
macro options	
Unconditionally o	werwrite existing database or hies
Leave Database	in DBO use only state
Preserve Replica	tion Settings
Keep Change Da	ta Capture
	🖉 OK Cancel Advanced 📴 Save As Script Hel
	ate
Run this	
Co Schedu	
Configur	e Schedule Pattern
Configur	e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	es Schedule Pattern Configure
	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
	e Schedule Pattern Configure
	e Schedule Pattern Configure
	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	le e Schedule Pattern Configure
	e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur	Tel Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help
Configur	Te e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur Configur	Iej e Schedule Pattern Configure
Configur Configur	e Schedule Pattern Configure Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help
Configur	Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Save Time 9:0054
Configur Configur	Ie e Schedule Pattern Configure Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help
Configur Configur	e Schedule Pattern Configure Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Save Time 9:00741
Configur	e Schedule Pattern Configure e Schedule Pattern Configure Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Set Time 9:00PM
Configur Configur	Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Save Time 9:00PM
Configur Configur	Ig
Configur Configur	Image: Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Save Time 9:00PH Save As Script Help
Configur	Image: Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Save Time 9 : 00 PM
Configur Configur	Image: Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Save Time 9:00PH
Configur Configur	Image: Source of the second
Configur Configur	Image: Cancel Advanced Save As Script Help Sate Time 9 : 00 PM

See Scheduling for a comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

SETTING UP PRE-POST PROCESSES

You can run batch files or shell scripts before and/or after restore jobs. Follow the steps given below to setup a process before or after the restore job:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the **<Instance>** and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database and click Recover All Selected.
- 5. Click **Advanced** and then click the **Pre/Post** tab.
- 6. If you want perform a process before the restore job, enter the path for the batch file in the **Pre Recovery Command** box or click **Browse** to select the batch file.
- If you want perform a process after the restore job, enter the path for the batch file in the **Post Recovery Command** box or click **Browse** to select the batch file.
- 8. Select one of the following options:
 - Use Local Accounts Select this option if the local account has permissions to execute the processes on the destination client.
 - **Impersonate User** Select this option and enter the username and password, that has the permissions to execute the processes on the destination client.
- 9. Click OK.
- 10. Click **OK** to start the restore.

SETTING UP A PRE/POST PROCESS TO RUN AFTER EACH ATTEMPT

By default, a specified post process command is executed only on successful completion of the restore operation.

Use the following steps to run a post process even if the restore operation did not complete successfully. For example, this may be useful to bring a database online or release a snapshot.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers | <***Client>* **| SQL Server**.
- 2. Right-click the **<Instance>** and then click **All Tasks | Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In the right pane of the Browse window, select a database and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 5. Click Advanced and then click the Pre/Post tab.
- 6. Enter the path for the batch file in the **Post Recovery Command** box or click **Browse** to select the batch file.
- 7. Select the **Run Post Process for all attempts** check box.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Click **OK** to start the restore.

MANAGING RESTORE JOBS

Once you initiate the restore operation, a restore job is generated in the Job Controller. Jobs can be managed in a number of ways. See Job Management for a comprehensive information on managing jobs.

The following sections provide information on the different job management options available:

RESTARTING JOBS

Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, click Control Panel icon.
- 2. Select Job Management.
- 3. Click Job Restarts tab and select a Job Type.
 - Select **Restartable** to make the job restartable.
 - $\circ~$ Change the value for $\ensuremath{\text{Max}}\xspace$ Restarts to change the maximum number of times the

Advanced Restore Options					L
Advanced General Startup Pre/Po	st Copy Precedence	Data Path Encryption	Alert	Options	
Pre Recovery Command					
					Browse
Post Recovery Command					
					Browse
Run Post Restore Process for a	al attempts				
Pre/Post Impersonation					
O Use Local System Account					
O Impersonate User					
User Name:					
			Ē	OK	Cancel Help

Advanced General Startup Pre/Post Copy Precedence Data Path Encryption Alert Options	
Pre Recovery Command	
	Browse
Post Recovery Command	
	Browse
U NUN POSt Restore Process for all attempts	
Pre/Post Impersonation	
O Use Local System Account	
O Impersonate User	
User Name:	

- Job Manager will try to restart a job.
- Change the value for **Restart Interval (Mins)** to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click OK.



CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.
RESUME	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.
KILL	Terminates a job.

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Suspend.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select **Resume**.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

ADDITIONAL RESTORE OPTIONS

Several additional options are available to further refine your restore operations. The following table describes these options, as well as the steps to implement them.

Be sure to read the overview material referenced for each feature prior to using them.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPIC
Use hardware revert capability if available	This option allow you to revert the data to the time when the snapshot was created. Selecting this option brings back the entire LUN to the point when the snapshot was created, overwriting all modifications to the data since the snapshot creation. This option is only available if the storage array used for SnapProtect Backup supports the revert operation.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client</i>> SQL Server .	
	2. Right-click the <instance></instance> and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data .	
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK .	
	4. In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected .	
	5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced .	
	6. Select Use hardware revert capability if available.	
	7. Click OK .	
Startup Options	The Startup Options are used by the Job Manager to set priority for resource allocation. This is	Refer to Job Priority and

	useful to give higher priority to certain jobs. You can set the priority as follows:	Priority Precedence.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i>Client></i> SQL Server .	,
	2. Right-click the <i>Instance</i> and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data .	
	3 In the Browse Ontions dialog hox, click OK	
	 In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected 	
	5 In the SOL Restore Ontions dialog box, click Advanced	
	6 In the Advanced Postere Options dialog box, dick Startun	
	7 On the Startup tables elect Change Priority	
	 Of the Startup (ab) select change Priority. Seter a priority number 0 is the highest priority and 000 is the lowest priority. 	
	 Enter a priority number - o is the highest priority and 999 is the lowest priority. Select the Start up in suspended State check bay to start the job in a suspended state. 	
Copy Precedence	By default, the system retrieves data from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data was pruned from the primary copy, the system automatically retrieves data from the other copies of the storage policy in the lowest copy precedence to highest copy precedence order. Once the data is found, it is retrieved, and no further copies are checked	Refer to Recovering Data From Copies.
	You can retrieve data from a specific storage policy copy (Synchronous Copy or Selective Copy). If data does not exist in the specified copy, the data retrieve operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy. Follow the steps given below to retrieve the data from a a specific storage policy copy:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i>Client></i> SQL Server .	
	2. Right-click the <instance></instance> and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data .	
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK .	
	4. In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected .	
	5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced.	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Copy Precedence.	
	7. On the Copy Precedence tab, select the Restore from copy precedence check box.	
	8. Enter the copy precedence number.	
	9. Click OK .	
Data Path Options	The data recovery operations use a default Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and Drive as the Data Path. You can use this option to change the data path if the default data path is not available. Follow the steps given below to change the default data path:	Refer to Change Data Path.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client</i>> SQL Server .	
	2. Right-click the <instance></instance> and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data .	
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK .	
	4. In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected .	
	5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced.	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Data Path.	
	7. On the Data Path tab, select the MediaAgent and Library .	
	8. Select the Drive Pool and Drive for optical and tape libraries.	
	9. Select the name of the Proxy server if you wish to restore using a proxy server.	
	You can select the Proxy server only when you are restoring from a snapshot. This option is not available for a regular restore.	
	10. Click OK .	
Encryption	If the client's data is encrypted with a pass phrase, you must enter the pass-phrase to start the data recovery operation. Follow the steps given below to enter the pass-phrase:	Refer to Data Encryption.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client</i>> SQL Server .	
	2. Right-click the <instance></instance> and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data .	
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK .	
	4. In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected .	
	5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced.	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Encryption.	

8. Click OK. Refer to Alert. Alerts This option enables users or user groups to get automatic notification on the status of the data for aler notifications/alerts: I. From the CommCell Browser, avagate to Client Computers <client) server.<="" sql="" td="" =""> Refer to Alert. 2. Refer to Alert. Refer to Alert. Refer to Alert. 3. In the Browse Options dialog box, dick Al Tests Browse Backup Dats. A. In the Client Browser window, select the database you want to restore and Click Recover A. Il Generation of the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, dick Alerts. S. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, dick Alerts. 5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, dick Alerts. Select the required address. Select the required of the Advanced Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification or the far address and click Next. Select the required form the command line common line or and to integrated interscript. Command Line Restores Commands can be excluded from the command line. Refer to Commcell Readiness. Report Commedial Readiness Refer to CommCell Readiness. Report I. From the Tools mean in the CommServe [CommCell Readiness. Refer to CommCell Readiness. Report I. From the Elaw Masser addition to the state specific compations. Refer to CommCell Readiness. Report I. Click the Client the additick the Modify button. I. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include</client)>		7. Enter the Pass Phrase.	
Aftertis This option enables users or user groups to get automatic nutification on the status of the data tecorer job. Follow the steps groups below to set up the oritics to size motification (altert: From the Committee to Client Computers CCIMPC 50, Server. Right-click the In the Browse polytions dialog box, click Alterts. In the Browse polytions dialog box, click Alterts. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Alterts. Click Add Altert. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Alterts. Click Add Altert. From the Add Altert Wisard dialog box, click Alterts. Click Add Altert. Select the required notification types and click Next. Click Add Altert. Command Line Restores The commands can be executed from the command line crists for specific potentions for the commonal bine crists for specific potentions for the commonal bine scripts of specific potentions for the commonal bine scripts for specific potentions for the commonal bine script of specific potentions for the commonal bine script of specific potentions for the commonal bine scripts of specific potentions for the commonal bine script of the specific potentia bin formation, such as connectivity and Refer to CommCell Readiness. Click CM Commodel Readiness (Click Heeports) Click CM Elementation for the Counce along bio bio, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client formate bio bio		8. Click OK .	
I. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> SQL Server. I. Right-tick the <-Znstance's and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data.</client>	Alerts	This option enables users or user groups to get automatic notification on the status of the data recovery job. Follow the steps given below to set up the criteria to raise notifications/alerts:	Refer to Alert.
2. Right-click the <instance> and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data. 3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK. 4. In the Client Torose window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected. 5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Allerts. 7. Click Add Mart. 8. From the Add Alert Wirard dialog box, click Allerts. 7. Click Add Mart. 8. From the Add Alert Wirard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next. 10. Select the required notification types and click Next. 11. Click Finish. 2. Click Add Reat. Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line interface. You can also generate command line excits for specific operations from the CommCell Readiness Report. CommCell Readiness Report Proof the Add Separate Torolow the toron the Instruction specific operations from the CommCell Readiness. 2. Click Net Client to and click the Modify button. 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Casadie, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 1. Click the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 1. Click the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 1. From the Tools menu in the Comm</instance>		1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <i>Client></i> SQL Server .	
3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK. 4. In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected. 5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced. 6. In the Add Alert. 7. Click Add Alert. 8. From the Add Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next. 10. Select the required notification types and click Next. 11. Click Finish. 12. Click OK. Command Line Restores Command Line Inferface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The command line Inferface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The command line Inferface enables you to perform backups or restore from the commend line. The command line Inferface enables you to perform backups or restore from the commend line. The command line Inferface enables you to perform backups or restore from the commend line. The forming the data protection or recovery job. Follow the commed line. The forming the data protection or recovery job. Tollow the steps given below to generate the report. CommCell Readiness Profit Client, MediaAgent and CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. Select the inform the Exclude list. 4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups click is box. Select the inform the Exclude list. 6. Click the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. Click the MediaAg		2. Right-click the <instance></instance> and then click All Tasks Browse Backup Data .	
4. In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover AII Selected. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next. Select the required notification types and click Next. Select the required notification types and click Next. Select the required notification types and click Next. Click OK Click Restores Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. Interface. Command Line Settores Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. Interface. CommCell Readiness of the Client, MediAgent and Commserve: Li to service the required threshold and notification streshows or restore from the command line. Interface. Refer to Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. Interface. CommCell Readiness The CommCell Readiness frequent Command comment line or can be integrated into scripts. The CommCell Readiness frequent Commserve: Li to servit to interface the report to command line. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Consile, click Reports. Navigate to Reports I CommServe I CommCell Readiness. Click the Include All Adlagent from the Exclude list. Click the Include All Adlagent from the Exclude list. Click Run. Click Include >.		3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK .	
S. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced. 6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Alerts. C. Click Add Alert. 7. Click Add Alert. B. From the Add Alert. 7. Click Add Alert. Command Line Restore 5. Eact the required notification types and click Next. 1. Click Finish. 7. Click Add Alert Wizzerd dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and Click Next. 1. Select the required notification types and click Next. 11. Click Finish. 2. Click OK. Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. Interface mables of the command in a scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser ustrate from the commacting the Save Script option. Refer to CommCell Readiness CommCell Readiness The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and Report. CommCell Readiness of the Client, MediAgent and CommServe (Is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report. Report. 1. From the Tools menu in the ConmCell Console, click Reports. Navigate to Reports [CommServe] CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Linclude > button. Select the refielaAgent from the Exclude list. Effer to Restore Job Summary Report is displayed. Restore Job Summary The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data rec		4. In the Client Browse window, select the database you want to restore and click Recover All Selected .	
6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Alerts. 7. Click Add Alert. 7. Click Add Alert. 8. From the Add Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next. 9. Select the recipients and click Next. 10. Select the recipients and click Next. 11. Click Finish. 2. Click OK. Command Line Restores Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts. Refer to Command Line Alert Mizard Click Next. CommCell Readiness Refer to CommCell Box Service command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save AS Script options. Refer to CommCell Readiness. Report From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Refer to CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. 1. In the Select Computer dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check hox. Select the MediaAgent tab. 9. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Click the MediaAgent tab. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include > . 1. Click the MediaAgent scheckbox. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery Report. Plot Sel		5. In the SQL Restore Options dialog box, click Advanced.	
Provide Section 2 Click Add Alert Vizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next. Select the required notification types and click Next. Select the required notification types and click Next. Command Line Restores Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts. The command Line Breat Sectore Store and Sectore Store from the Commed Line Sectore Store and Sectore Store from the Commed Line Sectore Store and Sectore Store from the Commed Line Sectore Store and Sectore Store from the Commed Line Sectore Store Store from the Commed Line Sectore Store		6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Alerts.	
Restore Job Summary Report 8. From the Add Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification oriteria and cick Next. 9. Select the required notification types and click Next. 10. Select the required notification types and click Next. 10. Select the required notification types and click Next. 11. Click Finish. 11. Click Finish. 12. Click OK. Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The commodic can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts. You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the Commodil Browser using the Save A Script aption. Refer to Command Line Interface analysis you with vital information, such as connectivity and reference. Refer to CommCell Readiness CommCell Readiness Refer to CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and reference. Refer to CommCell Readiness. CommCell Readiness Click the Client, MediaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report. Refer to CommCell Readiness. Click the Scient from the Exclude list. Select Computers dialog box, cleer the Include All Client Computers and All Click the Include > button. Select the MediaAgent tab. Select the MediaAgent tab. Click the Include All MediaAgent from the Exclude list. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list.		7. Click Add Alert.	
9. Select the required notification types and click Next. 0. Select the required notification types and click Next. 0. Select the required notification types and click Next. 1. Click Finish. 2. Click OK. Command Line Restores Refer to Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line scripts. Interface. Refer to Command Line Interface enables you the vicial information, such as connectivity and interface. CommCell Readiness The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vicial information, such as connectivity and so generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vicial information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, MediaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report. Refer to CommCell Readiness 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. Refer to CommCell Readiness 2. Olick the Client tab and click the Modify button. 4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. Select the HediaAgent tab. Refer to Restore Job Summary 0. Click the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 1. Click Include > . Click K Run. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report 2. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Refer to Restore Job Summary <		 From the Add Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification criteria and click Next. 	
10. Select the recipients and click Next. 1. Click Finish. 2. Click OK. Command Line Restores Command ine Interface anables you operform backups or restore from the command line. The command Line Interface. Refer to Command Line Interface. CommCell Readiness Refer to Command Line Save As Script option. Refer to CommCell Readiness Report The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, MediaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to CommCell Readiness 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 3. Click the Client, the and click the Modify button. Refer to CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client to and click the Modify button. 4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups Check box. 5. Select the client from the Exclude list. 6. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 6. Click Run. 1. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery provides hour the steps during the boot tog areate the report. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery provides to the poren as pecific client and agent. You can get in		9. Select the required notification types and click Next .	
1. Click Finish. 2. Click OK. Command Line Restores Commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts. You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the Commell Browser using the Save As Script option. Refer to Command Line Interface. CommCell Readiness The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Click, Mediagent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report. Refer to CommCell Readiness 2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. Report 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. Select the client from the Exclude list. Refer to Restores and All Client Tomps to the second list. 4. Click the Include > button. Click the MediaAgent tab. Click the MediaAgent tab. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery job. State are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and angent, You can all client for a provides you with information about all the data recovery job State are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and angent, You can all client for the specific spot after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report. Restore Job Summary The generate dreport is displayed. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for		10. Select the recipients and click Next .	
2. Click OK. Refer to Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. Interface. Refer to Command Line Interface. Command Line Restores You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save As Script option. Refer to CommCell Readiness CommCell Readiness The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report. Refer to CommCell Readiness Report The CommCell Readiness Report J CommServe. I to support the steps given below to generate the report. Refer to CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. Select the client for the Exclude list. 6. Click the Include > button. Click the MediaAgent tab. Select the MediaAgent for the Exclude list. 1. Click GK. Click the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. Select the deliad gents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. The generated report is displayed. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report are up in Job Summary Report and and gent. You can get information such a failure reason, failed objects, job pointow ict. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Navigate to Reports J Jobs J Job Summary.		11. Click Finish .	
Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The command Line Scripts. Refer to Command Line Interface. You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save As Script option. Refer to CommCell Readiness CommCell Readiness The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and report. Refer to CommCell Readiness Report The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and report. Refer to CommCell Readiness 3. Click the Glap order to or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. 5. Select the Include > button. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clare the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. Select the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clare the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. t. ti sueful to run this report matter such as failure reason, failed objects, job optiones ct. t. ti sueful to run this report matter performing		12. Click OK .	
You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save As Script option. Refer to CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, MediAagent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to CommCell Readiness. 1 From the Tools menu in the CommServe CommCell Readiness. Report. Report. 2 Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. Report. 3 Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. Select the client from the Exclude list. Click the Include > button. 0 Click the Include > button. Click the MediAagent tab. Clear the Include All MediaAgent scheckbox. Select the MediAagent from the Exclude list. Select the MediAagent from the Exclude list. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job opticins cli. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Prior the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Refer to Restore Job S	Command Line Restores	Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts.	Refer to Command Line Interface.
CommCell Readiness Refer to CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, WeidaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to CommCell Readiness 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. Report. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. Select the client from the Exclude list. Click the Include > button. 7. Click the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. Select the MediaAgent tab. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to Restore Job Summary Report. Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to Restore Job Summary Report. Report. Glick Run. Click Run.		You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save As Script option.	
1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. 4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. 5. Select the client from the Exclude list. 6. Click the Include > button. 7. Click OK. 8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report Report. The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report. 13. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Run. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run. 6. Click Run.	CommCell Readiness Report	The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, MediaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Refer to CommCell Readiness Report.
2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness. 3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. 4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. 5. Select the client from the Exclude list. 6. Click the Include > button. 7. Click OK. 8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run.		1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button. 4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. 5. Select the client from the Exclude list. 6. Click the Include > button. 7. Click OK. 8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery plots that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run. 6. Click Run.		2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness.	
4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box. 5. Select the client from the Exclude list. 6. Click the Include > button. 7. Click OK. 8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run. 5. Click Run.		3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button.	
5. Select the client from the Exclude list. 6. Click the Include > button. 7. Click OK. 8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run.		4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box.	
6. Click the Include > button. 7. Click OK. 8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the reports. 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run.		5. Select the client from the Exclude list.	
7. Click OK. 8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run.		6. Click the Include > button.	
8. Click the MediaAgent tab. 9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 11. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to Restore Job Summary. 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. Refort to un the report. 2. Click Run. 5. Click Run. 5. Click Run. 6.		7. Click OK .	
9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox. 10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run.		8. Click the MediaAgent tab.	
10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to Restore Job Summary Report. 10. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run. Click Run.		9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox.	
11. Click Include >. 11. Click Include >. 12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to Restore Job Summary Report. 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. Refer to Restore Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. Example Click Run.		10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list.	
12. Click Run. The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to Restore Job Summary Report. 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run. Click Run.		11. Click Include >.	
The generated report is displayed. Restore Job Summary Report is displayed. Refer to Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: Refer to Restore Job Summary 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. 2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. 3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. 4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. 5. Click Run.		12. Click Run .	
Restore Job Summary Report The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report: From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. Click Run. 		The generated report is displayed.	
 From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. Click Run. 	Restore Job Summary Report	The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Refer to Restore Job Summary Report.
 Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. Click Run. 		1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
 Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. Click Run. 		2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary.	
 On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report. Click Run. 		3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane.	
5. Click Run .		4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report.	
		5. Click Run.	

Data Aging - SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Getting Started

Extended Retention Rules

Data Aging for Transaction, Archive, and Logical Log Backups Retention Rules for Log Backups Data Aging for Stored Procedures SQL Back in Time Restores and Data Aging Rules Data Aging Rules for On Demand Backups

Enabling MSDB Database Clean-Up

GETTING STARTED

Data Aging is the process of removing old data from secondary storage to allow the associated media to be reused for future backups.

By default, all backup data is retained infinitely. However, you should change the retention of your data based on your needs. Note that if you continue to have infinite retention, you will also need infinite storage capacity.

1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies | Storage Policies.

2. Highlight the Storage Policy.

3. From the right pane, right-click the **Storage Policy Copy** and click the **Properties**.



4.

- Click the **Retain For** in the **Basic Retention Rules for All Backups** area.
- Enter number of days to retain the data.
- Enter number of cycles to retain the data.

- Click OK.
- 5. From the CommCell Browser, click the **Reports** icon.

6. Expand Reports and select Data Retention Forecast and Compliance.

7. Click Run.

8. The report will display the data to be pruned when a data aging job is run.

To ensure only data intended for aging is actually aged, it is important to identify the data that will be aged based on the retention rules you have configured. Hence, ensure this report includes only the data you intend to age.

If necessary, fine-tune your rules so that only the intended data is aged.

Once you run a data aging job, the data will be lost.

9. From the CommCell Console, right click the CommServe icon and click All Tasks | Data Aging.





Run Schedule Save As... Close Help

Expert 9.00(SULD64 Central ID FFFFFF Agent Types All
 Stengs Policy (Copy) All
 Locale linglish 👗 idol Cell Browse ide ide All Tasks Disaster Recovery Backu DR Restore ١ View • Ó Control Pan Properties Control Director Control Director Cost Analysis Cost Analysis Control Panel Data Aging Clien Security Stc Res mputers Add/Remove Software ۲ Send Log Files Event Search CommCell Migration Push Firewall Configuration Export Firewall Certificate

10. Select Immediate in the Job Initiation section and click OK.



11. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** window. When the job has completed, the Job Controller displays **Completed**.

Make sure that the job completes successfully. If the job did not complete successfully, re-run the job.

EXTENDED RETENTION RULES

Extended retention rules allow you to keep specific full (or synthetic full) backups for longer periods of time.

Extended retention rules can be used in the following circumstances:

- If you have a single drive tape library
- If you want to create a hierarchical retention scheme (grandfather-father-son tape rotation)

In all other cases, it is recommended that the Auxiliary Copy feature be used for extended storage as it actually creates another physical copy of the data, thereby reducing the risk of data loss due to media failure.

UNDERSTANDING EXTENDED RETENTION RULES

Extended retention allows you to retain a specific full (or synthetic full) backup for an additional period of time. For example, you may want to retain your monthly full backups for 90 days.

Extended retention rules allow you to define three additional "extended" retention periods for full (or synthetic full) backups. For example:

- You may want to retain your weekly full backups for 30 days.
- You may want to retain your monthly full backup for 90 days.
- You may want to retain your yearly full backup for 365 days.

A backup job will be selected for extended retention based on its start time. For example: If a backup job starts at 11:55 pm on August 31st and ends at 1 am on September 1st, then it will be selected as the last full backup for the month of August and will be picked up for extended retention.

SETTING UP EXTENDED RETENTION RULES

Use the following steps for setting up the extended retention rules:

- 1. Right-click the storage policy copy and click **Properties**.
- 2. Click the Retention tab.
- 3. Set the basic retention rules by clicking **Retain for** and entering the number of days and cycles appropriate for your organization.
- 4. Set the extended retention rules as follows:

Click the ${\bf For}$ button.

Enter the number of Days Total to retain the backup.

Click the Keep drop-down list, and select the desired backup criteria (e.g., Monthly Full).

Click the $\mbox{Grace Days}$ drop-down list and select the number of days (e.g., 2).

- 5. Repeat Step 4 to configure additional extended retention.
- 6. Click **OK**.

Copy Properties	×
Selective Copy Associations Media Advanced Deduplication General Retention Data Paths Data Path Configuration	
✓ Enable Data Aging	
Enable Managed Disk Space for Disk Library	
Do not retain intermediate incrementals and differentials before a new differential	
Spool Copy (No Retention)	
Basic Retention Rule for All Backups	
O Infinite	
Retain for 0 Days 1 Cycles	
Basic Retention Rules for Data/Compliance Archiver Data	
O Infinite	
Retain for 365 Days	
Extended Retention Rules for Full Backups	
V For Inhinte/ 30 Days Total Keep Weekly Full V Grace Days V	
V For Infinite/ 90 Days Total Keep Monthly Full V Grace Days V	
V Por Unnincei 365 Days Iocal Keep Yearry Hull V Grace Days V	
Select the jobs from previous tier	
For Weekly Full Rule the Week starts on: Friday	
For Monthly Full Rule the Month starts on:	
For all rules keep the:	
First hull backup of time period Solution	
Case rue backup or time period	
OK Cancel Help	

DATA AGING FOR TRANSACTION, ARCHIVE, AND LOGICAL LOG BACKUPS

Log Backups (transaction, archive, or logical logs) are not considered part of the backup cycle. Therefore, storage policy cycle retention parameters do not apply to them.

RETENTION RULES FOR LOG BACKUPS

Log backups may be linked to data backup operations, which can allow storage policy cycle retention parameters to be applied to them.

This can be achieved as follows:

• If a full backup job is run on data, then the next log backup job will be linked to this full backup job.

These are considered as linked or chained log backups and are not aged until the linked data is aged. In addition, the following is also considered:

- Logs that need to be copied to secondary copies will not be aged both on primary and non-primary source copy
- $\circ~$ Logs that exist only on one copy will be aged when they are older than the oldest data
- $\circ~$ Logs that exist on multiple copies will be aged according to copy retention days
- o Logs that exist on multiple copies with the longest retention days will be aged when they are older than the oldest data
- \circ Partial, disabled logs will be aged when they are older than the oldest data
- If a full backup job is run on data and logs, then the next log backup will not be linked to this full backup job.

As this is an unlinked log backup, by default, this will follow the unique data aging rules for log backups. If you want such log backups to be aged according to the defined days retention rule for the data, you can do so as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools** | **Control Panel**.
- 2. Double-click Media Management
- 3. Click the **Data Aging** tab.
- 4. Enable the Prune All Database Agent Logs Only By Days Retention Rule option.
- 5. Click **OK.**

LINKING FULL AND LOG BACKUPS FOR DATA RETENTION

Log backups are linked to a full backup if they are run at the same time and the JMEnableJobLinkForSQL LNDB key created in the client computer.

This is regardless of whether the full backup included data only or data and logs. Such backups follows the standard data aging rules.

You can create the key as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.

- 5. In the Name field, type JMEnableJobLinkForSQL_LNDB.
- 6. In the **Location** list, select CVD from the dropdown list.
- 7. In the Type list, select REG_DWORD.
- 8. In the **Value** field, type any non zero value.
- 9. Click OK.

Location egistry Key on Wi	Type	Value	Enabled	
gistry Key on Wi JMEnableJ	indows Client	ida40dpm2010	X	
Cvd 1		OK Cancel	▼ ■ Help	
	vdd Edit	Delete		
	1	1 Add Edk	1 OK Cancel	Cancel Help

DATA AGING FOR STORED PROCEDURES

Data Aging for the SQL Server *i*DataAgents performs the following stored procedures that you may have been manually running on Enterprise Manager. When Data Aging is run, the system ages these histories from the CommServe database and the SQL Server.

- sp_delete_backuphistory
- sp_delete_database_backuphistory
- sp_delete_backup_and_restore_history

SQL BACK IN TIME RESTORES AND DATA AGING RULES

When you perform a back in time restore (i.e., restoring to a backup cycle earlier than the current backup cycle), all differential and transaction log backups which were run after the full backup from which the restored data was obtained will not be able to be aged until a new full backup is run. Running a full backup after performing a back in time restore releases the older backups and subsequent log backups for data aging.

DATA AGING RULES FOR BACKING UP ON-DEMAND SUBCLIENTS

Data Aging for On Demand backup jobs uses days/time, and ignores cycles and extended retention rules, as the determining factor for pruning the data. Therefore, once the retention time criteria has been met, all data (for both data and logs) is pruned that was backed up using the storage policy specified in the Command Line Interface.

An effective storage policy strategy for SQL On Demand backups is as follows:

- The same storage policy should not be used for regular backups and On Demand backups.
- The storage policy copy containing logs of On Demand backups should have a much longer retention time than other storage policies used by regular backups for the same instance. This is to prevent the logs of On Demand backups from being pruned before the data of regular backups, and allow the database to be fully restored and recovered using the data of old regular backups and logs afterwards.

ENABLING MSDB DATABASE CLEAN-UP

By default, Data Aging jobs do not perform a client-side clean-up of database metadata. However, to ensure that unnecessary data is not left behind, you can either use the system stored procedures mentioned below per SQL instance:

- <sp_delete_backuphistory>
- <sp_delete_database_backuphistory>
- <sp_delete_backup_and_restore_history>

Or enable client-side clean-up of database metadata process as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computer.
- 2. Right-click the <CommServe Client> and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.

User Guide - SQL Server iDataAgent

- 5. In the Name field, type nDisableMSDBCleanup.
- 6. In the Location list, type CVD.
- 7. In the **Type** list, select **REG_DWORD**.
- 8. In the **Value** field, type 0 to enable database clean-up.
- 9. Click **OK**.

Network Thrott General Ve Search Serv	ling Policies rsion Secur ver URLs	Job Configuration ity Activity Contr Registry Key Setti	Encryption a ol Groups ngs	Advanced Content In Firewall Configur Client Side Deduplicati	idexing ation ion
Name	Location Registry Key o	Type	Value	Enabled	
Name Locatio Type Value	nDisableM CVD REG_DW	ISDBCleanup DRD		•	
			K Ca	ncel Help	
	(Add Edit	Delete		

ADVANCED TOPICS

Data Aging - Advanced Provides comprehensive information on additional Data Aging capabilities.

Disaster Recovery - SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Planning for a Disaster Recovery

```
Rebuilding the Operating System
```

Rebuilding the SQL Server Instance Rebuilding the Master Database (Quick Rebuild) Rebuilding Each SQL Server Instance (When Quick Rebuild Does Not work)

Restoring the SQL Server Instance

PLANNING FOR A DISASTER RECOVERY

Before you begin a disaster recovery, make sure to plan for disaster recovery as follows:

BUILDING A STANDBY SERVER FOR DISASTER RECOVERY

You can build a standby server for quick recovery and ensure that the standby database is always kept in a near ready state. If you plan to adopt this method follow the steps described in Replication Using Warm Database Restore.

MANAGING BACKUPS

As a best practice, it is recommended that you group databases into multiple subclients as follows:

- Add larger databases into separate subclients.
- Add small databases together into one or more subclients. This is important for the following reasons:
 - o During Disaster recovery, when you have to quickly rebuild the entire instance, you can concurrently restore all the subclients together.
 - During Backup failures, the backup will restart from the beginning of the database instead of from the beginning of the entire instance. Similarly, this will ensure that large database backups are not affected by restarts from a smaller database.
- Once the subclients are created, schedule frequent backups for dynamic data and regular backup schedules for static data in the SQL Server.

REBUILDING THE OPERATING SYSTEM

In the case of disaster recovery, where a full system restore is required, you must first rebuild the system to exactly the state as it existed before the problem. Use the following steps to rebuild the operating system:

- 1. Rebuild the hardware if needed.
- 2. Install the same version of the Windows operating system with the same patches that were previously installed.
- 3. Configure the client with the same networking parameters and passwords that were previously set.
- 4. Edit the host file of the client to include the CommServe name.
- 5. Install the Windows File System iDataAgent on the client.
 - In a clustered environment, you must reinstall to the same virtual node as was being used previously.
- 6. Perform a full system restore of the Windows File System iDataAgent.

After you rebuild the operating system, if the SQL Server instance starts, use the steps in Restore the SQL Server Instance to restore the data.

REBUILDING THE SQL SERVER INSTANCE

After rebuilding the operating system, if the SQL Server Instance does not start, you need to rebuild the instance and then restore it to the current state. You can rebuild the instance by rebuilding the master database or by reinstalling each instance.

REBUILDING THE MASTER DATABASE (QUICK REBUILD)

The master database can be rebuild using SQL Server or SQL Server Express.

IF THE MASTER DATABASE EXIST

- 1. Insert the SQL Server installation media into the disc drive. If you are using SQL Server Express, download the Express kit and extract the contents to a local directory.
- From the command prompt, navigate to the disc drive or the extracted directory and run the command for rebuilding the master database.
 For SQL 2005:

start /wait setup.exe /qn INSTANCENAME=<InstanceName> REINSTALL=SQL_Engine REBUILDDATABASE=1 SAPWD=<NewStrongPassword>
REINSTALLMODE=vomus

where:

/qn = suppresses all setup dialog boxes and error messages.

/qb = allows display of basic setup dialog boxes and error messages.

For SQL 2008:

Setup /QUIET /ACTION=REBUILDDATABASE /INSTANCENAME=InstanceName /SQLSYSADMINACCOUNTS=accounts [/SAPWD=StrongPassword] [/SQLCOLLATION=CollationName]

where:

/QUIET or /Q = setup runs without any user interface.

- 3. From the command prompt, run Services.msc
- 4. Right-click the SQL Server instance and select Start.
- 5. Restore the SQL Server Instance

IF THE MASTER DATABASE DOES NOT EXIST

In case when the master database is not available, use the following steps to rebuild the master database:

- $1. Navigate to the directory where the SQL Server is installed, usually C: \Program Files \Microsoft SQL Server \MSSQL. 1 \M$
- 2. Open the Template Data folder and verify that there is a copy of the system databases created automatically during the original install.
- 3. Copy the missing files and paste them into the Data directory (C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL.1\MSSQL\Data).
- 4. From the command prompt, run Services.msc
- 5. In the Services window, right-click the SQL Server instance and select Start.I

REBUILDING EACH SQL SERVER INSTANCE (WHEN QUICK REBUILD DOES NOT WORK)

If the quick rebuild method does not work, you can rebuild the SQL Server by reinstalling each SQL Server instance.

- 1. Uninstall the existing SQL Server instances.
- Install the SQL Server instances using the same installation paths and configuration settings as the previous installation.
 Paths and instance name information of the original installation can be viewed by browsing the backup data from the CommCell Browser.
- 3. From the command prompt, run Services.msc
- 4. In the Services window, right-click each SQL Server instance and select Start.

RESTORING THE SQL SERVER INSTANCE

Restoring the SQL Server Instance involves restore of all the databases (system databases as well as the user created databases) of a SQL Server instance to the same computer.

Once you have rebuild the SQL Server instance, you can restore the instance using the following steps:

- 1. Stop any application or services that are accessing the SQL databases.
- 2. Restore the system databases.
- 3. Restore the user databases to a consistent point in time in the order that you require.

When restoring non-system databases, each database being restored runs as a separate job and a separate SQL process. Therefore, avoid starting more restores (jobs) than your SQL server and available memory can handle.

Additional Operations - SQL Server iDataAgent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Audit Trail Auxiliary Copy License Administration Online Help Links Operating System and Application Upgrades Operation Window Schedule Policy Storage Policy Uninstalling Components

AUDIT TRAIL

The Audit Trail feature allows you to track the operations of users who have access to the CommCell. This capability is useful if a detrimental operation was performed in the CommCell and the source of that operation needs to be determined.

Audit Trail tracks operations according to four severity levels:

- Critical: This level records operations that will result in imminent loss of data.
- High: This level records operations that may result in loss of data.
- Medium: This level records changes to the general configuration of one or more entities. Such changes may produce unintended results when operations are performed.
- Low: This level records changes to status, addition of entities, and other operations that have minimal impact on existing CommCell functions.

To set Audit Trail retention periods:

- 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Control Panel, and then select Audit Trail.
- 2. From the Audit Trail dialog box, select the desired retention time (in days) for each severity level.
- 3. Click **OK**.

AUXILIARY COPY

An auxiliary copy operation allows you to create secondary copies of data associated with data protection operations, independent of the original copy.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click storage policy for which you want to perform an auxiliary copy, click All Tasks, and then click Run Auxiliary Copy.
- 2. If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the CommServe level, select the storage policy for which you wish to perform the auxiliary copy.

If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the Storage Policy level, the Storage Policy field is already populated with the name of the Storage Policy you selected.

- 3. If the source copy is configured with a shared library, select the **Source MediaAgent** for the auxiliary copy.
- 4. Click OK to start the auxiliary copy operation. A progress bar displays the progress of the operation.

LICENSE ADMINISTRATION

REQUIRED LICENSES

The Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent requires the iDataAgent for Microsoft SQL Server license.

CONVERTING EVALUATION LICENSES TO PERMANENT LICENSES

If you installed the software using an Evaluation License, you can upgrade to a Permanent License as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the CommServe icon, click Control Panel, and then click License Administration.
- 2. Select the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Update License}}$ tab and then click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Convert}}.$
- 3. Check the box that corresponds to the evaluation license you would like to upgrade and then click Convert.

The license information is updated in the **License Administration** window.

USING CAPACITY-BASED LICENSING

License Usage by Capacity is a licensing mechanism that allows you to obtain licenses based on the amount of data you back up. It provides the following features:

- Flexibility of usage on all agents, rather than being tied to number of server, agents, etc.
- Allows you to purchase licenses based on your data protection needs

Both Core and Enterprise license types are available. Refer to License Usage by Capacity for comprehensive information on utilizing this method.

RELEASING A LICENSE

If you no longer require a license on a computer, such as cases where the computer is being retired, you can release the license and use it later for another computer. Backup data from the retired computer can still be restored after the license is released provided the data is not aged.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the name of the client from which you want to release a license, click All Tasks, and then click Release License for Client.
- 2. Click **OK** to continue releasing the license
- 3. Click **Yes** to confirm you want to release the license or **No** to abort.

ONLINE HELP LINKS

Use the following links to view the online help for the corresponding tabs in the CommCell Console:

OPERATIONS	ENTITY	ONLINE HELP LINKS	SUB LINKS
CONFIGURATION	Agent	SQL Server Properties (General)	
		SQL Server Properties (Version)	
		SQL Server Properties (Security)	
		SQL Server Properties (Activity Control)	
		SQL Server Properties (Authentication)	
	Instance	Properties of SQL Server: < instance name> (General)	
		Properties of SQL Server: < instance name> (Accounts)	
		Properties of SQL Server: < instance name > (Security)	
	Subclient	Subclient Properties of < <i>Subclient Name</i> > (General)	Database Configuration
		Subclient Properties of < Subclient Name > (Content)	File / File Group Configuration
		Subclient Properties of <subclient name=""> Backup Rules) (Databases)</subclient>	
		Subclient Properties of <i><subclient name=""></subclient></i> (Backup Rules) (File/File Groups)	
		Subclient Properties of < Subclient Name> (Pre/Post Process)	
		Subclient Properties of < Subclient Name> (Storage Device)	
		Subclient Properties of <subclient name=""> (Activity Control)</subclient>	
		Subclient Properties of <subclient name=""> (Encryption)</subclient>	
		Subclient Properties of <subclient name=""> (Security)</subclient>	
		Subclient Properties of < Subclient Name> (SQL Settings)	
ВАСКИР	Backup Options	Backup Options for Subclient < Subclient Name>	Save As Script
			Command Line XML Options
			Schedule Details
	Advanced Backup Options	Advanced Backup Options (Data)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Startup)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Job Retry)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Media)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Data Path)	
		Advanced Backup Options (VaultTracking)	
		Advanced Backup Options (Alert)	
RESTORE	Restore Options	SQL Restore Options (General)	Save As Script
		SQL Restore Options (Job Initiation)	Command Line XML Options
			Schedule Details

Advanced Restore Options	Advanced Restore Options (Advanced General)	1
	Advanced Restore Options (Startup)	
	Advanced Restore Options (Pre/Post)	
	Advanced Restore Options (Copy Precedence)	
	Advanced Restore Options (Data Path)	
	Advanced Restore Options (Encryption)	
	Advanced Restore Options (Alert)	
	Advanced Restore Options (Options)	

OPERATING SYSTEM AND APPLICATION UPGRADES

Operating system upgrades are only supported when upgrading from one version of an OS to a different version of the same OS (e.g., Win2003 to Win2008). The two methods of upgrading are:

- Seamless Upgrade This involves uninstalling the Agent software, upgrading the operating system, and then re-installing the Agent software.
- Full OS Replacement This involves performing a clean install of a new version of the OS, re-installing any application software, then re-installing the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Agent software.

For Full OS Replacement, the client computer must be configured to have the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Client software re-installed to the same location, the same Fully Qualified Domain Name or short domain name, the same partitions, disk drive format (FAT, NTFS, et. al.), and IP configuration as previously.

If it is necessary to remove Agent software to facilitate an operating system or application upgrade, do not delete the icon for the Agent from the CommCell Console, or all associated backed up data will be lost.

Use the following strategy to upgrade the operating system software:

- Identify the computers you want to upgrade and the CommCell components installed on each of these computers.
- Choose the type of upgrade procedure you want to use on each computer: seamless or full replacement.
- CommServe, MediaAgent, and Client computers can be upgraded in any order.

OPERATION WINDOW

By default, all operations in the CommCell can run for 24 hours. To prevent certain operations from running during certain periods of the day, you can define operation rules so that these operations are disabled during those times.

When operation rules are configured, operations that are started within the time window specified will go to a queued (as opposed to pending) state. Once the time window specified in the operation rule has elapsed, these queued or running operations will resume automatically.

- 1. In the CommCell Browser, right-click the appropriate entity, click All Tasks, and then click Operation Window.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. From the **Operation Window** dialog box:
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name of the rule in the Name field.
 - Select either an administration, data protection (either full or non-full), and/or a data recovery operation from the **Operations** pane.
- 4. Click **OK**.

SCHEDULE POLICY

A schedule policy is a defined schedule or group of schedules for specific operations to be performed on associated objects within the CommCell. When the schedules from a policy are run, the specified operations, (e.g., auxiliary copy, backup, etc.,) will be performed on the associated CommCell objects.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Schedule Policies and click Add.
- 2. Type the Name of the schedule policy.
- 3. Select the **Type** of schedule policy.
- 4. Select the Agent Type.
- 5. Type a description of the schedule policy.
- 6. Click Add.
- 7. Enter a Schedule Name in the Schedule Pattern tab.
- 8. Click **OK**.

- 9. On the Associations tab, select the objects to be associated with the schedule policy.
- 10. Click OK.

STORAGE POLICY

A Storage policy defines the data lifecycle management rules for protected data. Storage policies map data from its original location to a physical storage media and determine its retention period.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Storage Policies, and select New Storage Policy.
- 2. Click Next.
- 3. Select Data Protection and Archiving to create a regular storage policy or CommServe Disaster Recovery Backup to backup the CommServe database and click Next.
- 4. Click Next.
- 5. Enter the name of storage policy and click Next.
- 6. Enter the name of the primary copy and click Next.
- 7. From the drop down box, select the default library for the primary copy and click Next.
- 8. From the drop down box, select the MediaAgent and click Next.
- 9. Enter number of data streams and set the retention period for the policy and click Next.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. Click Browse, browse to your designated deduplication store location and click Next.
- 12. Confirm your selections and click Finish.

UNINSTALLING COMPONENTS

You can uninstall the components using one of the following method:

Method 1: Uninstall Components Using the CommCell Console

Method 2: Uninstall Components from Add or Remove Programs

METHOD 1: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS USING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the desired Client Computer and click All Tasks -> Add/Remove Programs and click Uninstall Software.
- 2. Uninstall Software Options dialog will appear.
- 3. In the Uninstall Software tab, select Uninstall All to uninstall all the software packages.
- 4. In the Job Initiation tab, select Immediate to run the job immediately.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer**.

METHOD 2: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS FROM ADD OR REMOVE PROGRAMS

- 1. Click the Start button on the Windows task bar and then click Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Add/Remove Programs.

For Windows Vista/Windows 2008, click Uninstall a Program in the Control Panel.

- 3. Click **Remove** to uninstall the components in the following sequence:
 - 1. <Agent>
 - 2. File System iDataAgent
 - 3. Base Software

ADVANCED TOPICS

Provides comprehensive information about additional capabilities for the following features:

- Audit Trail
- Auxiliary Copy
- License Administration
- License Usage by Capacity

User Guide - SQL Server iDataAgent

- Operation Window
 Schedule Policy
 Storage Policies
 Uninstalling Components

Back to Top

Best Practices - SQL Server iDataAgent

CONCURRENTLY BACKING UP SQL SERVER WITH OTHER APPLICATIONS

When running backups using the Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent, do not concurrently perform backups using other applications (e.g., Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Edition). Doing so may compromise future restore operations.

There are a few jobs that SQL Server restricts during a backup. If one of these jobs are initiated while a backup is already in progress (or if a backup is initiated while one of these jobs is in progress) the backup job will terminate. These jobs are:

- creating or deleting database files
- creating an index
- performing any non-logged job
- shrinking the database.

CHANGING THE RECOVERY MODEL IN SQL SERVER

If you change the recovery model from Simple Recovery Model to either Bulk-Logged or to Full, it is recommended that you run a full database backup.

INCREASING THE SPEED OF SQL BACKUPS

If you want to increase the speed of SQL backups, you can increase the number of streams used by the backup to a number greater than 1 and enable software compression at the subclient level. Keep in mind that when you perform backups using multiple streams, you must have the same number of streams to restore the data.

You can set up multiple streams as described in Configuring Data Streams.

RE-CONFIGURING DEFAULT SUBCLIENT CONTENT

We recommend that you do not re-configure the content of a default subclient because this would disable its capability to serve as a catch-all entity for client data. As a result, some data will not get backed up or scanned.

CREATING SUBCLIENTS

As a best practice, it is recommended that you add only a few small databases to each subclient and add larger databases into separate subclients. On a restart condition, the system will back up all databases in the subclient from the beginning. For this reason, you would not want a large database that has completed its backup successfully to be backed up again only because a smaller one has caused a restart to occur.

FILE AND FILE GROUP BACKUP AND RESTORE

If you plan to execute File/File Group restore jobs, plan to back up Transaction Logs regularly, because File/File Group restores cannot run without them.

Transaction Log Backups are required, refer to Microsoft article at http://support.microsoft.com/kb/281122.

BACKING UP AND RESTORING REPLICATION DATABASES

SQL Server replication allows distributing data to various servers throughout an organization.

It is recommended to backup the following replicated databases and their associated system databases regularly:

• The publication database at the Publisher

The master and msdb system databases at the Publisher and the publication database must be backed up at the same time.

• The distribution database at the Distributor

The master and msdb system databases at the Distributor and the distribution database must be backed up at the same time.

The subscription database at each Subscriber

The master and msdb system databases at the Subscriber and the subscription database must be backed up at the same time.

Also make sure, when these databases are restored, the master and msdb database are consistent with the associated system database in terms of replication configuration and settings.

For backups and restores recommendations and strategies, refer to Microsoft article **Backing up and Restoring Replicated Databases** at http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms151152.aspx.

CHANGING STORAGE POLICIES

If you change a storage policy for a default subclient, and want to restore to a point in time prior to the change (i.e., restore from previous storage policy),

perform a Full backup of the database as soon as possible. Data from the old storage policy will not be considered as the most recent cycle and when it exceeds its retention period, and hence will be pruned.

SETTING PRIMARY REPLICA AS BACKUP PREFERENCE

It is recommended to set the primary replica as backup preference to ensure that complete backup cycles are available for restores later. Setting this preference will eliminate the possibility of the following errors:

1. SKIPPING DATABASE [ALWAYSON_DATABASE]. NOT A PREFERRED REPLICA TO RUN BACKUP

This error is displayed when the replica is not set as the backup preference and the SQL *i*DataAgent is set to recognize the backup preference setting of the availability groups. When a backup of the replica is attempted the databases which are a part of the availability group will be skipped.

2. SKIPPING DATABASE [ALWAYSON_ DATABASE]. ONLY BACKUP LOG IS FULLY SUPPORTED ON SECONDARY REPLICAS. BACKUP DATABASE SUPPORTS ONLY COPY-ONLY FULL BACKUPS OF THE DATABASE, FILES, OR FILE GROUPS. DIFFERENTIAL BACKUPS ARE NOT SUPPORTED ON SECONDARY REPLICAS

This error will be displayed because the secondary replicas support copy only database backups. When backup of databases which are a part of availability group is attempted on secondary replica, such databases will be skipped from being backed up.

3. If transaction log backups are running on all replicas, and truncation happens during backup on secondary replica it will lead to breaking LSN chain on secondary replica.

Frequently Asked Questions - SQL Server iDataAgent

HOW DO I INSTALL SQL SERVER IDATAAGENT ON A COMPUTER WHERE MICROSOFT SQL SERVER SOFTWARE IS NOT INSTALLED?

Use the bIgnoreSQLServerCheck registry key to install the Microsoft SQL iDataAgent on a computer that does not have the Microsoft SQL server software installed.

IS MICROSOFT WINDOWS VISTA SUPPORTED?

Backups using the the SQL Server iDataAgent on Windows Vista are supported as long as the same User account (and not the local system account) is used to run the CommVault Communications Service (GxCVD) and for the SQL instance. See Running Services Using a Windows User and User Accounts for more details. Back to Top

HOW ARE TRANSACTION LOGS TRUNCATED?

Truncation of transaction logs use the following rules:

- Transaction logs will be truncated at the completion of a Transaction Log backup.
- Transaction logs will be truncated every time a checkpoint is processed, if the database is in truncate mode.
- Full and Differential backups do not truncate transaction logs.

CAN I RUN LOG AND FULL BACKUPS SIMULTANEOUSLY?

Yes. Full and log backup operations can run simultaneously for the same subclient. However, a full backup needs to exist prior to running them together. After a full has been run, subsequent parallel backups will work since the risk of breaking the chain will be lessened. When full and log backup operations are run simultaneously, the conversion rules will not be honored.

Note that running full and differential backups at the same time is not supported.

HOW DO I BACKUP A SQL DATABASE IN WINDOWS SHAREPOINT SERVICES (WSS)?

To successfully backup a SQL Database in a Windows SharePoint Services (WSS) environment, where the instance name of the Windows Internal Database resembles something like MachineName\Microsoft##SSEE, you need to:

- 1. Change the flag Hide Instance to No in SQL Server Configuration Manager -> Protocols for MachineName \Microsoft##SSEE.
- 2. Ensure that the SQL Server Browser service is running in SQL Server Configuration Manager-SQLServer 2005 Services.
- 3. Ensure that Named Pipes is enabled in SQL Server Configuration Manager→Protocols for MachineName\Microsoft##SSEE.

WHEN DOES A NON-FULL BACKUP AUTOMATICALLY GET CONVERTED TO A FULL BACKUP?

A non-full backup is automatically converted to a full backup in the following situations:

- First backup of the subclient.
- Re-associating a subclient to another storage policy.
- Promote a secondary storage policy copy that is not synchronized with a primary copy (for all the subclients of a storage policy).
- If a backup job within the most recent backup cycle is pruned or disabled from a primary copy.
- Adding a new content path to the subclient.
- If you switch from a SnapProtect backup to a traditional backup or vice versa.
- CommCell Migration operation.
- After the following restore jobs the subsequent backup job for that database is automatically converted to a full backup:
 - $\circ~$ Point in time restore
 - $\circ~$ Transaction mark restore
 - Partial ("piecemeal") restore

WHAT HAPPENS IF I HAVE TWO DATABASES WITH THE SAME NAME?

If you set the SQL Server collation option to case-sensitive and two databases with the same name are created, the system will only discover one database.

WHAT DO I DO WHEN I UPGRADE THE SQL SERVER TO A NEWER VERSION

The system will automatically detect and display the newer version in the CommCell Console as follows:

• The SQL Server version information is refreshed and displayed in the instance Properties dialog box.

- The next backup that is run detects the new version.
- The database version of the backup is displayed during the browse operation.

However, if a SQL Server instance on which backups have been run is upgraded to a newer version and subsequently restored to a time prior to the SQL Server upgrade, the database will display the older version. To convert the database to a newer version, perform a full backup of the database after the restore.

HOW DO I RESTORE MULTIPLE SQL SERVER DATABASES TO A CONSISTENT TIME?

For some SQL server environments, you may have multiple databases for which absolute synchronization of the databases after a restore is critical. Transaction Mark restores and Point In Time restores are two means of keeping your databases synchronized.

- For transaction mark restores, you must administer and maintain your Microsoft SQL server transaction marks so that they are available for use by the SQL *iDataAgent*.
- Point in time restores use log backups to get your databases back to a specific minute and second. Backing up the tail of the log will be critical if you want to restore to just before the point of failure.

Follow the steps in Restoring SQL Server Databases to a Transaction Mark and Restoring SQL Databases to a Point in Time to restore the databases to a consistent time

HOW DOES TRANSPARENT BROWSE WORK FOR SQL SERVER?

The transparent inclusion during Browse operations provides the ability to restore data to a selected point in time. When restoring databases to a Transaction Mark or when using a Point in Time restores, the restore chain consists of the most recent full, the latest differential (if any), all subsequent log backups taken prior to the selected browse time, and, transparently, the next log backup after the browse time.

ARE THERE ANY CONSIDERATIONS WHEN RESTORING DATABASES BACKED UP BY VSS?

- VSS-enabled backup jobs must be restored to the original instance.
- For restore of databases backed up with VSS, databases can be moved to a new location on the server and can be renamed. However, data files cannot be renamed.
- To restore any system database that was previously backed up using VSS, the SQL Server services have to be stopped and restarted in single user mode.
- If the database is installed on the system drive, non-system databases will need to be manually brought back online after the restore.

WHAT ARE RESTORE CHAINS?

When you pick a restore time, the system determines the optimal combination of full, differential and log backups necessary to bring back the database(s) to the selected time. This combination of backups is the restore chain.

- For basic database restores, the restore chain consists of the most recent full, the latest differential (if any), and all subsequent log backups (if any) taken prior to the selected restore time.
- When restoring databases to a Transaction Mark or when using a Point in Time restore, the restore chain consists of the most recent full, the latest differential (if any), all subsequent log backups taken prior to the selected browse time, and, transparently, the next log backup after the browse time. The transparent inclusion enables restores to a selected point in time.

IN WHAT ORDER SHOULD SYSTEM DATABASES BE RESTORED?

- The master database must be restored first as it has to be online when other databases are restored.
- The msdb database should be restored second as it contains schedules.
- The model database can be restored third.

WHAT DOES THE "UNCONDITIONALLY OVERWRITE EXISTING DATABASE OR FILES" DO?

When this option is selected, the data being restored is unconditionally written to the specified location and overwrites the files of any database that is currently using the database name specified by you. This implements the T-SQL REPLACE command.

When this options is not selected, the restore job prevents the accidental overwrite of data files by failing the job.

WHAT IS THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN INSTANCE RESTORE AND MULTIPLE DATABASES RESTORE?

When you perform an instance restore, all the databases are restored in one simultaneous job. However, if you select multiple databases that are not system databases, they are restored as multiple jobs.

HOW ARE THE TRANSACTION LOGS USED WHEN BROWSING THE BACKUP DATA FOR A FILE/FILE GROUP RESTORE?

When a browse operation is performed, files that existed as of the most recent full backup but were removed later will be included in the search results due to the replaying of the logs. Conversely, if a file was created after the most recent full backup, the search results will not present it for selection but the

transaction log will re-create this file as part the restore.

HOW CAN I RECLAIM SPACE AFTER TRANSACTION LOG IS TRUNCATED?

Use the DBCC SHRINKDATABASE command for Microsoft SQL Server to reduce the size of transaction logs, this will help reclaiming space. For using the command, refer to Microsoft article **DBCC SHRINKDATABASE (Transact-SQL)** at http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms190488.aspx.

Troubleshooting Backup - SQL Server iDataAgent

Backup Restore

BACKUP FAILURES

The following section provides information on troubleshooting backups.

Database name contains [and] brackets	The use of embedded brackets '[' and ']' in database name may result in backup failures.
All data paths for the subclient are offline or busy	This error may be displayed if the Override Datapaths option is selected in the Data Paths dialog box in the Subclient Properties for a Log Storage Policy. This results in the Transaction Log backup operation waits for resources.
	To work around this issue, deselect the Override Datapaths option.
Time Out Failures	The default time allocated for backup and restore operations of SQL databases is 0 (infinite). If a backup or restore operation fails due to a timeout being reached, you can configure the nSqlQueryTimeout registry key to increase the amount of allocated time for backup or restore operations.
SQL Server jobs that cause backups to terminate	There are a few jobs that SQL Server restricts during a backup. If one of these jobs are initiated while a backup is already in progress (or if a backup is initiated while one of these jobs is in progress) the backup job will terminate. These jobs are:
	creating or deleting database files
	creating an index
	 performing any non-logged job
	shrinking the database.
Backup chain is broken	When a full or differential backup is performed outside of the system, for example, from SQL Enterprise Manager, the subsequent log backups performed using SQL Server <i>i</i> DataAgent is set Do not convert log backups to full if log backup was performed using other software in the Subclient - Backup Rules tab.
	Make sure to enable the Disable Log Consistency Check in the Subclient - SQL Settings tab to ensure that the backup job completes successfully.

COMPLETED WITH ONE OR MORE ERRORS

Backup jobs from Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent will be displayed as "Completed w/ one or more errors" in the Job History in the following cases:

- When a subclient which contains multiple databases is backed up, if one of the database is not backed up due to reasons like, database is in standby mode or database got corrupt etc, then job completes w/ one or more errors. The databases that failed will be shown as part of the failed items and those that were backed up will be shown as part of the successful items.
- When running a backup, a check is made to verify if the backup is restorable. If the log chain is broken the job will be displayed as Completed With Errors.
- A SQL backup job for a subclient with multiple databases will not retry backing up a single database if it fails. However, the job status will be displayed as Completed With Errors.

If the job goes into pending state, the job will restart from the point where it failed and if an attempt to back up the failed database has already been made, another attempt will not be performed.

• For databases that are manually defined in a subclient but are inaccessible (e.g., it is not recognized, is offline, etc.), the job status for the backup will be displayed as Completed With Errors.

An event will be created for the inaccessible database during backup. If the inaccessible database is not needed, it can be permanently deleted from the subclient content.

VIRTUAL NODES ARE NOT BEING AUTOMATICALLY DISCOVERED IN A VERITAS CLUSTER ENVIRONMENT

Virtual nodes have to be configured manually after installing the SQL Server *i*DataAgent in a Veritas Cluster Environment from the CommCell Console. Follow the steps given below to configure the Virtual node:

- 1. From CommCell Console, navigate to the **SQL Server** *i***DataAgent**.
- 2. Right-click the SQL Server iDataAgent| All Task and click New SQL Server.
- 3. Enter the SQL Server Name of the Virtual Node.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. The virtual node will be visible under the selected SQL Server iDataAgent.



Troubleshooting Restore - SQL Server iDataAgent

Backup Restore

BROWSE FAILURES

No Data to Restore	The following error message is displayed during a browse operation if CommServe and SQL Server time are not synchronized.
	There is no data to restore. Verify that the correct dates have been entered.
	Verify and ensure that the CommServe and SQL Server time are synchronized as close as possible. The SQL Server client can be ahead of the CommServe but not behind.
Time Out Failures	The default time allocated for backup and restore operations of SQL databases is 0 (infinite). If a backup or restore operation fails due to a timeout being reached, you can configure the nSqlQueryTimeout registry key to increase the amount of allocated time for backup or restore operations.
Time Out Failures for large databases	If the database you are attempting to restore is particularly large, it may become necessary to increase this time-out value.
	Re-run the restore after increasing the VDI Timeout value as described in Set the VDI Timeout Value for Large SQL Database Restores, see Increasing the VDI Timeout for step-by-step instructions.
Restore Failure of large Database	For large databases with over 2TB of Data, restore may fail due to not enough timeout in minutes. Set the timeout value of the query thread (for backup or restore) to a higher value, use nSQLQueryWaitMaxRetryCount registry key to change the timeout value.

COMPLETED WITH ONE OR MORE ERRORS

Restore jobs from Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent will be displayed as "Completed w/ one or more errors" in the Job History in the following cases:

• When multiple databases are restored, if restore of one of the databases fail.

FILE SHARE RESOURCES NOT COMING BACK ONLINE

In MSSQL cluster, after restoring system database, the File Share Resources may not come backup online.

• Manually bring online the File Shared Resource using the Failover Cluster Manager.

RECOVERING DATA ASSOCIATED WITH DELETED CLIENTS AND STORAGE POLICIES

The following procedure describes the steps involved in recovering data associated with the following entities:

- Deleted Storage Policy
- Deleted Client, Agent, Backup Set or Instance

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

This procedure can be performed when the following are available:

- You have a Disaster Recovery Backup which contains information on the entity that you are trying to restore. For example, if you wish to recover a storage policy (and the data associated with the storage policy) that was accidentally deleted, you must have a copy of the disaster recovery backup which was performed before deleting the storage policy.
- Media containing the data you wish to recover is available and not overwritten.
- If a CommCell Migration license was available in the CommServe when the disaster recovery backup was performed, no additional licenses are required. If not, obtain the following licenses:
 - IP Address Change license
 - CommCell Migration license

See License Administration for more details.

• A standby computer, which will be used temporarily to build a CommServe.

RECOVERING DELETED DATA

- 1. Locate the latest Disaster Recovery Backup which contains the information on the entity (Storage Policy, Client, Agent, Backup Set or Instance) that you are trying to restore.
 - You can check the Phase 1 destination for the DR Set or use Restore by Jobs for CommServe DR Data to restore the data.
 - If the job was pruned and you know the media containing the Disaster Recovery Backup, you can move the media in the Overwrite Protect Media
 Pool. See Accessing Aged Data for more information. You can then restore the appropriate DR Set associated with the job as described in Restore by Jobs for CommServe DR Data.

- o If the job is pruned and you do not know the media containing the Disaster Recovery Backup, you can do one of the following:
- If you regularly run and have copies of the Data on Media and Aging Forecast report you can check them to see if the appropriate media is available.
- 2. On a standby computer, install the CommServe software. For more information on installing the CommServe, see CommServe Deployment.
- 3. Restore the CommServe database using the CommServe Disaster Recovery Tool from the Disaster Recovery Backup described in Step 1. (See Restore a Disaster Recovery Backup for step-by-step instructions.)
- 4. Verify and ensure that the Bull Calypso Client Event Manager Bull Calypso Communications Service (EvMgrS) is running.
- 5. If you did not have a CommCell Migration license available in the CommServe when the disaster recovery backup was performed, apply the IP Address Change license and the CommCell Migration license on the standby CommServe. See Activate Licenses for step-by-step instructions.
- 6. Export the data associated with the affected clients from the standby CommServe as described in Export Data from the Source CommCell.

When you start the Command Line Interface to capture data, use the name of the standby CommServe in the - commcell argument.

7. Import the exported data to the main CommServe as described in Import Data on the Destination CommCell.

This will bring back the entity in the CommServe database and the entity will now be visible in the CommCell Browser. (Press F5 to refresh the CommCell Browser if the entity is not displayed after a successful merge.)

- 8. If you have additional data that was backed up after the disaster recovery backup and before the deletion of the entity, use the procedure described in Import Metadata from a Tape or Optical Media to obtain the necessary information.
- 9. You can now browse and restore the data from the appropriate entity.

As a precaution, mark media (tape and optical media) associated with the source CommCell as READ ONLY before performing a data recovery operation in the destination CommCell.

SQL Server Properties (General)

Use this dialog box to manage the SQL Server properties.

Client Computer

Displays the name of the client computer or application server.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the Agent is associated with a billing department.

iDataAgent

Displays the identity of the agent that is installed on the client computer.

Installed

Displays the date on which the agent was installed or upgraded on the client computer or application server.

Auto Discover Instances

When selected, new instances are automatically discovered every 24 hours; or whenever the Communications Service (GxCVD) service is restarted.

By default this option is enabled, if it is selected during the Agent installation. (Express editions do not have the ability to select this option during the Agent installation, but is automatically selected after the installation.

Manage Content Automatically

When selected, SQL databases that were automatically discovered but later deleted will be automatically deleted from the content of the default subclient when the next backup is run.

When cleared, databases that are manually added and later deleted are not automatically removed from the subclient when the next backup is run and the backup job will complete with errors.

By default, this is selected after client install or upgrade.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

User Guide - SQL Server iDataAgent

Version

Use this dialog box to view the *i*DataAgent version.

Security

Use this dialog box to:

- Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.
- Associate this object with a user group.
- Disassociate this object from a user group.

Available Groups

Displays the names of the user groups that are not associated with this CommCell object.

Associated Groups

Displays the names of user groups that are associated with this CommCell object.

Activity Control

Use this dialog box to enable or disable backups and restores on a selected subclient.

If data management and data recovery operations are disabled at the client computer group or client level, then these operations below these levels will be disabled. If data management / data recovery operations are enabled at the client computer group or client level, then these operations below these levels will be enabled.

Enable Backup

Specifies whether Backups will occur from this agent or subclient.

If cleared:

- Backup operations from this agent or subclient cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running and waiting data management operations for this agent or subclient run to completion.
- Stopped data management operations for this agent or subclient cannot be resumed until this option is enabled.
- Pending data management operations for this agent or subclient do not run until this option is enabled.

Enable Restore

Specifies whether Restores will occur from this agent or subclient.

If cleared:

- Restore operations from this agent or subclient cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running and waiting data recovery operations for this agent or subclient run to completion.
- Stopped data recovery operations for this agent or subclient cannot be resumed until this option is enabled.
- Pending data recovery operations for this agent or subclient do not run until this option is enabled.

Agent Properties (Authentication)

Use this dialog box to provide a valid user account to access to SQL Server to perform all operations, including backup, restore and browse.

Override Higher Levels Settings

Select to override the account settings configured at the Control Panel and Client Group levels for the selected SQL iDataAgent.

Use Local System Account

The Windows account configured to run the Communications Service (GxCVD) service and which is used by the system to perform all operations, including backup, restore and browse. By default, this is the Local System Account.

Impersonate User

Select to enter a user name and password for the Windows User Account that has permission to perform all operations, including backup, restore and browse. The account must already be set up on the client and must have Local administrator privileges and be a member of the SQL sysadmin fixed server role for the instance.

User Name

Use this space to type the name of the Windows user account that will have permission to execute the desired commands.

Password

Use this space to type the corresponding password for the account.

Properties of SQL Server: <*instance name*> (General)

Use this dialog box to manage the SQL Server Instance properties.

Client name

Displays the name of the client computer on which this instance is found.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the Instance is associated with a billing department..

iDataAgent

Displays the name of the *i*DataAgent to which this instance belongs.

Version

Displays the SQL version.

Server Type

Displays the server type according to the instance selected to be added.

VDI Timeout

Use the space to type the VDI Timeout value in seconds.

When restoring a SQL database, the VDI timeout represents the time the system must wait for the SQL server to become ready to accept data into the database. If the database you are attempting to restore is particularly large, it may become necessary to increase this time-out value.

Use VSS

Available for SQL Server clients running on Windows Server.

When selected, traditional full backups for all databases within the instance will be switched to VSS full backups.

When cleared, all full backups for all databases within the instance will use the traditional backup methods.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Subclient Properties of <*subclient name*>(General)

Use this dialog box to manage the SQL Server database properties.

Client Name

Displays the name of the Client computer to which this subclient belongs.

Billable Entity

Displays the name of the Billable Entity, when the subclient is associated with a billable entity.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the subclient is associated with a billing department.

*i*DataAgent

Displays the name of the *i*DataAgent to which this subclient belongs.

Instance

Displays the name of the Instance to which this subclient belongs.

Subclient

Displays the name of this Subclient.

You can use this space to enter or modify the name of the subclient.

Allow multiple data readers for Backup Copy

Specifies whether multiple data reads are allowed for a single Windows physical drive during backups on this subclient. This should be selected only for specialized hardware such as RAID, or possibly in the case of spanned volumes.

Disable Auto-Discovery

Specified to disable the auto-discovery and pre-assignment of SQL databases to the default subclient. By default, SQL databases are automatically discovered and assigned to the default subclient. (This option is available only in the default subclient.)

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Back to Top

Subclient Properties of <*subclient name*> (Content)

Use this dialog box to define the contents of a new subclient or change the content of an existing subclient.

Database List (for databases)

Displays the names of databases that are currently included in the subclient content.

Database (for file/file groups)

Displays the names of database in which the file/file groups reside.

The names of file groups that are currently included in the subclient content are also displayed as a table.

Configure

Click to discover and add additional items to the subclient content.

Delete

Click to remove one or more items from the subclient content.
Properties of SQL Server: <*subclient name*> (Backup Rules)

Use this dialog box to enable or disable backup rules used to convert backup jobs under special circumstances to prevent failure conditions.

Convert

When selected, switches backup types as indicated under given circumstances.

When cleared:

- All backup jobs for master database will be converted to full backups.
- Backup jobs for msdb and model will run as is.
- For any user defined database, the system will fail the backup jobs that fits these given circumstances.

Log backups

• Convert a log backup to full if a log backup was performed using other software

Indicates that the next backup should be run as a full backup.

When a full or differential backup is performed outside of the system, for example, from SQL Enterprise Manager, the next log backups performed using SQL Server *i*DataAgent are not converted to a full backup. Therefore, it is recommended to run a full backup with the SQL Server *i*DataAgent.

• Do not convert log backups to full if log backup was performed using other software

Indicates that the next backup should be run as a log backup.

When using this option, make sure to enable **the Disable Log Consistency Check** in the **SQL Settings** tab to ensure that the backup job completes successfully. If this option is not selected, the backup job will fail with the error "Backup chain is broken".

File or File groups are added

When selected the next backup job is switched to a full backup.

When cleared, the selected backup type continues unchanged.

Properties of SQL Server: <instance name> (Backup Rules)

Use this dialog box to enable or disable backup rules used to convert backup jobs under special circumstances to prevent failure conditions.

Convert

When selected, switches file/file groups backup as indicated.

When cleared, the backup jobs will fail backup jobs in the given circumstances.

Pre/Post Process

Use this dialog box to add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the selected subclient.

Pre Backup Process

Displays the name/path of the process that you want to run before the pre-backup phase.

You can use this space to enter a process that will execute before this phase, or use the **Browse** button to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Post Backup Process

Displays the name/path of the process that you want to run after the post backup phase.

You can use this space to enter a process that will execute before this phase, or use the **Browse** button to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark

Run Post Backup Process for all attempts

Specifies whether this process will execute for all attempts to run the phase.

When selected, this option will execute the specified process for all attempts to run the phase, including situations where the job phase is interrupted, suspended, or fails.

When cleared, the specified process will only execute for successful, killed, or failed jobs.

Run As / User Account

Displays either the Local System Account, or for added security, another account as having permission to run these commands.

Change

Click to add or modify the account that has permission to run these commands.

Storage Device

Use this dialog box to establish the storage device related settings on the selected subclient.

The following tabs are displayed:

- (Data) Storage Policy
- Data Transfer Option
- Deduplication

STORAGE POLICY

Use this tab to select or view storage policy settings on the selected subclient.

Data/Database/Transaction Log Storage Policy

Displays the storage policy to which this subclient is currently associated. To associate a storage policy to a new subclient or to change the storage policy associated with an existing subclient, click one in the list.

Incremental Storage Policy

Displays the name of the Incremental Storage Policy associated with this subclient, if the storage policy has the Incremental Storage Policy option enabled.

Data Paths

Click to view or modify the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected storage policy.

Create Storage Policy

Click to launch the Create a Storage Policy wizard. Once the storage policy has been created, it will be displayed in the list of storage policies to which the selected subclient can be associated.

DATA TRANSFER OPTION

Use this tab to establish the options for data transfer.

Software Compression

Indicates whether software compression for the subclient or instance is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether it is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

• On Client

Click to enable software compression on the client computer.

On MediaAgent

Click to enable software compression on the MediaAgent computer.

• Off

Click to disable software compression.

Note that hardware compression has priority over the software compression. Hardware compression is established in the Data Path Properties dialog box. The above software compression option will take effect when the data path is associated with a disk library, or when hardware compression is disabled in the data path associated with tape libraries.



If the subclient is associated with a storage policy copy that is deduplicated, then the compression settings on the storage policy copy takes precedence. See Copy Properties (Deduplication) - Advanced tab for compression settings on deduplicated storage policy copy.

Resource Tuning

Indicates the processes used by the client to transfer data based and whether bandwidth throttling is enabled or not.

Network Agents

Specifies the number of data pipes/processes that the client uses to transfer data over a network. Increasing this value may provide better throughput if the network and the network configuration in your environment can support it. On non-UNIX computers, the default value is 2 and a maximum of 4 can be established if necessary. On UNIX computers the default value is 1 and a maximum of 2 can be established if necessary.

• Throttle Network Bandwidth (MB/HR)

Specifies whether the backup throughput is controlled or not. (By default this option is not selected and therefore the throughput is not controlled). When selected, use the space to specify a value for the throughput. By default, this is set to 500. The minimum value is 1 and there is no limit to the maximum value. (In this case the backup throughput will be restricted to the maximum bandwidth on the network.)

Use this option to set the backup throughput, based on the network bandwidth in your environment. Use this option to reduce the backup throughput, so that the entire network bandwidth is not consumed, especially in slow links. Increasing this value will end up consuming the bandwidth with the maximum throughput limited to the network bandwidth capability.

Note that throttling is done on a per Network Agent basis.

DEDUPLICATION

Use this tab to establish the options for deduplication on the subclient. It indicates whether deduplication for the subclient is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether the signature generation (a component of deduplication) is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

Note that deduplication is supported on disk storage devices. So the deduplication options are applicable only if the subclient is associated with a Storage Policy containing disk storage.

On Client

Click to enable signature generation on the client computer.

On MediaAgent

Click to enable signature generation on the MediaAgent computer.

Back to Top

Activity Control

Use this dialog box to enable or disable backups and restores on a selected subclient.

If data management and data recovery operations are disabled at the client computer group or client level, then these operations below these levels will be disabled. If data management / data recovery operations are enabled at the client computer group or client level, then these operations below these levels will be enabled.

Enable Backup

Specifies whether Backups will occur from this agent or subclient. .

If cleared:

- Backup operations from this agent or subclient cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running and waiting data management operations for this agent or subclient run to completion.
- Stopped data management operations for this agent or subclient cannot be resumed until this option is enabled.
- Pending data management operations for this agent or subclient do not run until this option is enabled.

Encryption

Use this dialog box to select the data encryption options for the selected content. When accessing this dialog box from the Subclient Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to the selected subclient content for operations run from the CommCell Console. When accessing this dialog box from the Instance Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to third-party Command Line operations. The functionality is not propagated to the Subclient Properties Encryption tabs.

None

When selected, no encryption will take place during a data protection operations.

Media Only (MediaAgent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is transmitted without encryption and then encrypted prior to storage. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination client(s). When using pass-phrase security for third-party Command Line operations or DataArchiver Agents stub recovery operations, you must export the pass- phrase to the destination client.

Network and Media (Agent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted before transmission and is stored encrypted on the media. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination clients.

Network Only (Agent Encrypts, MediaAgent Decrypts)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted for transmission and then decrypted prior to storage on the media. During data recovery operations, data is encrypted by the MediaAgent and then decrypted in the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will not be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations.

Script Preview

Click to display the backup script, based on the current subclient configuration, that will be submitted to RMAN when backups are performed for the selected Oracle subclient.

Properties of SQL Server: <*subclient name*> (SQL Settings)

Use this dialog box to specify tunable settings and log consistency checking for SQL backups.

Block Size

Specifies the block size that will be used during backup. All data transfers are in integral multiples of this value. Either accept the default value of 65, 536 bytes (i.e., 64KB) or enter a value between 512 bytes and 65, 536 bytes inclusive.

Buffer Count

Specifies the total number of buffers that will be used during backup. Either accept the default value of 1 or enter a value between 1 and INT_MAX (the maximum value of an int on the platform being used).

Note the following:

- The value cannot be less than the number of streams configured at the subclient level; otherwise, the number of streams will be used during backup.
- If the buffer count is higher than the streams, the buffer count is used during backup.

Maximum Transfer Size

Specifies the maximum transfer size that will be used between during backup. Either accept the default value of 65, 536 bytes (i.e., 64KB) or enter a value in multiples of 64 KB. The range is between 65, 536 bytes and 4, 294, 967, 296 bytes (i.e., 4 MB).

Disable Log Consistency Check

By default, this option is enabled and the software will check for log consistency during backup. If detected that the backup chain is broken when this option is enabled, the job will not proceed. Select this option to disable log consistency checking. When disabled, if the software detects that the chain is broken, the job will not fail but the database being backed up may not be restorable later on.

Database Configuration

Use this dialog box to discover and change the databases included in the subclient.

Database Name

Lists the names of the databases for inclusion in the subclient.

Subclient Name

Displays the subclient to which the database is assigned. Click this space to assign the database to one of the following:

- Default subclient
- Any user-defined subclient
- Do Not Backup subclient

Change all selected databases to

When more than one database is selected, reassigns the selected databases to the selected subclient.

Discover

Discovers new databases not yet included in the subclient contents.

File/File Group Configuration

Use this dialog box to discover and change the files /file groups included in the subclient.

Database

Displays the name of the database whose current file groups and files are displayed in the table below. To change the database name, click one in the list. The following information is displayed for the files and file groups that have been discovered through clicking **Discover**.

• Name

Displays the names of the file groups and files for the database.

• Type

Displays the type of data (file group or file) within the database

• Physical File Name

Displays the directory path for the included files.

• Subclient

Displays the subclient to which the database is assigned. Click this space to assign the database to an user-defined subclient to the database.

Discover

Discovers any file groups/files not yet configured within the system, allowing them to be assigned to subclients other than the default.

Change all selected FFG to

When more than one file group/file is selected, reassigns the selected file groups/files to the selected subclient.

Backup/Archive Options

Use this dialog box to schedule or immediately run a backup/archive job. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Select Database Backup Type

• Full

Specifies the job as a Full backup, which backs up all data for the selected subclient(s).

• Differential

Specifies the job as a Differential backup, which backs up only that portion of the data that is new or has changed since the last full backup.

• Transaction Log

Specifies the job as a transaction log backup. This will back up the transaction log, providing point-in-time restore functionality.

Do not truncate log

Specifies the operation will back up the transaction log in situations where the database is damaged or has not been recovered.

Job Initiation

• Run Immediately

Specifies this job will run immediately.

• Schedule

Specifies this job will be scheduled. Click **Configure** to specify the schedule details.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

• Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Advanced

Click to select advanced backup/archive options, such as Start Log After Successful Backup, Partial (Excludes read-only Filegroups), and Tail-log Backup.

Save As Script

Click to open the Save As Script dialog, which allows you to save this operation and the selected options as a script file (in XML format). The script can later be executed from the Command Line Interface using qoperation execute command.

When you save an operation as a script, each option in the dialog will have a corresponding xml parameter in the script file. When executing the script, you can modify the value for any of these XML parameters as per need.

To view the XML values for each of the options in the dialog, see the following:

- Command Line XML Options for Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent
- Command Line XML Options for MySQL iDataAgent

Back to Top

Save as Script

Use this dialog box to choose a name and path for the script file and the mode of execution.

Client

Enter or select the name of the client computer where the script will be created.

Path

Enter the path for the script that will be created.

Browse

Click this button to browse to a path for the command line script.

- Scripts are not supported on the Windows NT platform.
- It is recommended not to use any reserved device names (e.g., LPT1) as the name of the file.
- The file names are not case-sensitive.
- Do not end the file name with a trailing space or a period. Although the underlying file system may support such names, the operating system does not support them.

Mode

• Synchronous

Specifies that the script execute in synchronous mode. A synchronous operation exits only when the operation has completed. This option is only available when scripting a single job.

• Asynchronous

Specifies that the script execute in asynchronous mode. An asynchronous operation submits the job to the CommServe and exits immediately, returning control to the calling program or script.

Specify User Account to Run the Script

Specifies to use the given user account to save the operation as a script.

• Use the Currently Logged in User Account

Click to use the same user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

o User Name

Type the user name that was used for logging into the CommCell Console.

o Password

Type the password for the user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

o Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

• Use a Different User Account

Click to specify a different user account to save the operation as a script.

User Name

Enter the different user name to be used for saving the operation as a script.

• Password

Enter the password for the user account to be used for saving the operation as a script.

• Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

Back to Top

Schedule Pattern

Use this dialog box to schedule jobs.

Schedule Name

Displays the name of the schedule. If creating a new schedule, use this space to enter the name of the schedule.

One Time

For a job run a single time. Select the date and time you want the job to begin.

Daily

For a job run on a daily basis. Choose the interval, in days, at which you want the job to repeat.

Weekly

For a job run on a weekly basis. You can run the job every n number of weeks on the selected days of the week.

Monthly

For a job run on a monthly basis. You can run the job every n number of months on the selected date or day. You can also select the standard calendar or a custom calendar (if available). Monthly schedules using custom calendars will run according to the definitions of a month as defined in the calendar.

Yearly

For a job run on a yearly basis. You can run the job annually on the selected date or day.

The Monthly and Yearly selections allow you to schedule other calendar events that are commonly of interest. For example, you can schedule backups on the last weekday every three months for quarterly backups. Optionally, you can select the **Every n Month(s)** option, which allows you to customize intervals at which the job will run. You can also select the standard calendar or a custom calendar (if available). Yearly schedules using custom calendars will run according to the definitions of a year as defined in the calendar.

Automatic Schedule

Select this option to run a job on a specified frequency.

Job Interval

Allows you to specify intervals for jobs.

• Minimum Interval between Jobs

Specify the number of hours to start a backup job if the below criteria (Network Management, Power Management and Resource Utilization) is/are satisfied.

• Maximum Interval between Jobs

Specify the number of hours since the last successful job completed to start a job even if the below criteria (Network Management, Power Management and Resource Utilization) is/are not satisfied.

Network Management

Allows you to specify the available network types.

• Start only if wired network is available

Select to start the job when the network connectivity is wired.

• Start only if specific network is available

Select to start a job using a specific network. Specify network details and add the network address.

• Minimum Network Bandwidth n Kbps

Select to specify the minimum number of kbps that the job should use for the network bandwidth. By default, the minimum bandwidth is 128.

• Throttle at n % until bandwidth n Kbps

Select to specify the percentage of throttle that the job should use until the bandwidth reaches an specific kbps value. By default, the job throttles at 40% until the bandwidth is 2048.

Power Management

Allows you to specify power management options for the computer.

• Start only if the computer is running on A/C power

Select this option to run the job only when the computer is on A/C power.

• Stop the task if batter mode begins

Select this option to stop the job if the computer is on battery mode.

Resource Utilization

Allows you to setup the job schedule with specific resource utilization.

• Start only if CPU utilization is below

Select this option to run the job when CPU utilization is below the specified percentage.

• Start the job if free disk space drops below

Select this option to run the job when disk space is below the specified percentage.

Options

Click to display Advanced Scheduling Options.

Advanced Backup/Archive Options (Data)

You can select advanced backup/archive data options for the operation. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or enabler for which the information is being displayed.

Start Log Backup after Successful Backup

Specifies that a Transaction Log backup will start automatically after a successful Full or Differential backup operation is completed. This is useful when you want to back up logs immediately after a data backup, and allows you to do so without creating two scheduled jobs.

SQL Native Backup Compression

For SQL Server 2008 Enterprise or later, specifies that the backup will be compressed by SQL Server before being backed up. The size of the backup will be smaller than an uncompressed backup of the same data. Typically, compressing a backup will require less device I/O which should increase backup speed significantly. However, CPU usage may increase for compressed backups and you may want to evaluate performance counters. Scheduling the backup during off-peak hours or compressing only low-priority backups may be desirable. When using the SQL Native Backup Compression option, there is no need for deduplication as the data will be compressed with this option and deduplication will not consequently save any more space.

VSS-enabled and SnapProtect backups are not supported backup types for compression.

Partial (Excludes read-only Filegroups)

A partial backup resembles a full database backup, but does not contain all the filegroups. Instead, it contains all the data in the primary filegroup, every read/write filegroup, and any optionally-specified read-only files. Partial backups are useful whenever you want to exclude read-only filegroups. A partial backup of a read-only database contains only the primary filegroup.

Tail-log Backup (database is left in restoring state)

This advanced backup option is only available if the **Transaction Log** option was selected in the Backup Option dialog box. Specifies to back up the tail of the log and to leave the database in the RESTORING state.

Copy Only

A copy-only backup is an independent backup and does not affect the usual chaining involved in traditional backups. This type of backup can be performed for a special purpose and does not affect the overall backup and restore procedures. It applies to full backups, full Volume Shadow Services (VSS)-enabled backups, and full SnapProtect backups.

After taking a full copy-only backup, log backups cannot be run unless a traditional full backup is present. Differential backups can be run but they cannot be restored unless a traditional full backup exists prior to the differential.

Create Backup Copy immediately

Select to create an inline backup copy to start movement of snapshot to media, immediately after the completion of the SnapProtect backup job.

Startup

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Priority

• Use Default Priority

If selected, the default priority for this type of job will be used in determining how the Job Manager will allocate resources for this job.

• Change Priority

Use this option to manually specify the priority for the job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). The Job Manager will use the priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.

Start up in suspended state

Specifies that this job will start in the Job Controller in a suspended state and cannot run until the job is manually resumed using the **Resume** option. This option can be used to add a level of manual control when a job is started. For example, you could schedule jobs to start in the suspended state and then choose which scheduled jobs complete by resuming the operation started in the suspended state.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Job Retry

Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or operation for which the information is being displayed.

Enable Total Running Time

The maximum elapsed time, in hours and minutes, from the time that the job is created. When the specified maximum elapsed time is reached, as long as the job is in the "Running" state, it will continue; if the job is not in the "Running" state when the specified time is reached, Job Manager will kill the job.

Enable Number of Retries

The number of times that Job Manager will attempt to restart the job. Once the maximum number of retry attempts has been reached, if the job has still not restarted successfully, Job Manager will kill the job. Note that this job-based setting will not be valid if restartability has been turned off in the Job Management Control Panel.

Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires

Option to kill the job when the specified Total Running Time has elapsed, even if its state is "Running". This option is available only if you have specified a Total Running Time.

Advanced Backup Options (Media)

You can select advanced backup media options for the operation.

Start New Media

This option starts the backup/migration/archive operation on a new media, which causes the following to occur:

- If removable media is used, the current active media is marked as Appendable and a new media is used for the backup/migration/archive.
- If disk media is used, a new volume folder is created for the backup/migration/archive.

If cleared, the operation automatically uses the current active media or volume.

Mark Media Full after Successful Operation

This option marks media full, 2 minutes after the completion of the backup/archive operation. If any jobs are initiated within the 2 minutes, they are allowed to write to the media. If the job was associated with the prior media, new media (such as a new tape) will be used for subsequent jobs. (Applies to all backup/archive types.)

Allow other Schedule to use Media Set

This option allows jobs that are part of a schedule policy or schedule and using a specific storage policy to start a new media and also prevent other jobs from writing to the set of media. It is available only when the **Start New Media** and **Mark Media Full** options are enabled, and can be used in the following situations:

- When one scheduled job initiates several jobs and you only want to start new media on the first job.
- When you want to target specific backups to a media, or a set of media if multiple streams are used.

Extend Job Retention

- Infinite: Select this option to retain this job indefinitely.
- Number of Days: Select this option to prune this job after the number of days specified.
- Storage Policy Default: Select this option to apply the retention rules of the associated storage policy, which is the default option.

Advanced Backup Options (Data Path)

Select the data path to be used for the backup/archive operation.

Ensure that the Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and the Drive selected for this operation is available online and is a part of the associated Storage Policy.

Use Library

Specifies the name of the library that will be used to perform the backup operation. Use this option when you wish to backup to a specific library.

Use MediaAgent

Specifies the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to perform the backup operation. If necessary, you can change the name of the MediaAgent.

For example, if the library is shared and you wish to use a specific MediaAgent (instead of the system selected MediaAgent, or a MediaAgent which may be idle, or less critical) or if you know that the library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

Use Drive Pool

Specifies the name of the Drive Pool that will be used to perform the backup operation. Use this option when you wish to backup using a specific Drive Pool.

Use Drive

Specifies the name of the Drive that will be used to perform the backup operation. Use this option when you wish to backup using a specific Drive from the selected Drive Pool.

Vault Tracking

Select options to export and track media, using Vault Tracker.



Vault Tracking Options will be displayed only when a Vault Tracker license is available in the CommServe.

🖌 Vault Tracking options are only applicable for data protection operations using a storage policy associated with a library

Export media after the job finishes

Specifies the media used by the data protection operation and media with the specific Media Status (if specified) will be exported and tracked by Vault Tracker.

Exclude Media Not Copied

When selected, allows you to exclude media with jobs that have to be copied.

Media Status

• All

Click to select all media. Clear this option to select media with a specific status.

• Active

Click to select media with its status marked as active.

• Full

Click to select media with its status marked as full.

• Overwrite Protected

Click to select media with its status marked as read-only .

Bad

Click to select media with its status marked as bad.

Export Location

Specifies the destination location and lists the stationary locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Track Transit

Specifies that transit information must be tracked, and lists the transit locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Use Virtual Mail Slots

Specifies the exported media is stored within the library in the virtual mail slots defined in the Library Properties (Media) dialog box.

Filter Media By Retention

Specifies that the system must automatically filter media based on whether the media has extended retention jobs or not.

Media with extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with at least one extended retention job will be exported.

Media with no extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with no extended retention jobs will be exported.

Alert

Use this tab to configure an alert for a schedule policy.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

• Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

SQL Restore Options (General)

Use this dialog box to control how the specified data is to be restored.

Note that restore options vary for single and multiple database restore jobs. The differences are noted below:

Destination Server

Displays the name of the instance to which the selected data will be restored. To change the destination, click one from the list.

The list includes SQL Servers in the CommCell which have the SQL Server *i*DataAgent installed. Note the following:

- SQL Server 2000 databases can be restored to servers with SQL Server 2000 or SQL Server 2005.
- SQL Server 2005 databases can be restored to servers with SQL Server 2005.

Source Server

Displays the name of the source server or database, depending on whether an instance or database was selected for restore.

Database List

Displays the names of the databases for restore if there is more than one such database.

Server State (or Database State)

Displays the current state of the server or database, depending on whether an instance or database was selected for restore.

Restore Types

Specifies the type of restore job.

Database Restore

Specifies that the restore operation must restore the selected databases beginning with the most recent full backup and then applying differential and/or transaction log backups up to the selected restore time.

• Step Restore

Specifies that the restore operation must perform a step restore by applying the selected transaction log.

Note that when you have a Quick Recovery Agent, transaction logs for a QR Volume that contains SQL data can also be restored using this option.

Whether the logs are applied to a recovered Quick Recovery Agent volume or to a SQL step restore operation, this option is available only under the following conditions:

- Single database restores
- o The restore destination is the source computer
- o The database backup and restore histories have not been removed from the SQL server's history tables
- $\circ\;$ The selected database was previously restored to:
- STANDBY state for SQL step restore
- NORECOVER state for QR Agent log application

This option is not available for:

- Instance restores
- Multiple database restores
- File/File Group restores
- $\circ\;$ When restoring data protection operations that used VSS to create the snapshot

Recover Only

Specifies that the restore operation must recover the databases to an available online state. No data is actually written. All other options are disabled when this option is selected.

Point in time

Specifies that the restore operation must restore single or multiple databases to the selected date and time.

Note the following when this option is selected:

- $\,\circ\,$ In order to restore a database to a point in time, a transaction log backup must exist.
- If a single database is restored, then the Restore Time selection changes from a list of available backups to selection boxes for date and time
- If multiple databases are restored, then the **Restore Time** selection is already in the date/time selection format and clicking **Point-in-Time** accepts the selected date and time exactly as selected. If the restore time falls within the time span of a transaction log backup, the database is restored to the exact time indicated. Otherwise, the database is restored to the latest available backup prior to the selected time.

If the selected point in time is before any database backup was performed, a time selection out of range message will be displayed.

• Transaction Log Marks

Specifies that the restore operation must restore transaction marks in the transaction log. This option is enabled only when the database(s) selected for restore have transaction marks in the transaction log. The **Restore Time** list displays a list of transaction marks that exist in the selected database(s) for the given restore time. When multiple databases are being restored, this list shows only those marks that are common in name and time stamp to all selected databases in order to effect an in-sync restore.

• Partial Restore

Partial restores, known as "Piecemeal Restore" in SQL Server 2005, allow databases that contain multiple filegroups to be restored and recovered in stages. The process starts with a restore of the primary filegroup, then a restore or recovery of one or more secondary filegroups.

• Latest Backup Data

Allows restores of the latest backup data on one or more **non system** secured database in the SQL Server. You can use this feature to create a spare copy of the primary SQL server database (hot standby server) within the same domain, a different domain, or across a Wide Area Network (WAN).

• Apply Log backups only

Only available when the **Latest Backup Data** option is selected. Select this option if you wish to include only the transaction log backups completed since the last restore operation. The restore operation will then skip any full backup jobs completed since the last restore operation.



If you do NOT select the **Apply Log Backups Only** option and the database already exists, all backup jobs completed since the last restore operation will automatically be restored. If you do NOT select the **Apply Log Backups Only** option and the database does not already exist, the software will automatically perform a full restore of the database.

• Skip Full Backup

Select this option to NOT restore the last full backup since the specified date and time, but to instead restore only the transaction log backups. This option can be useful if the latest full backup has already been restored by third-party software and thus a restore of the SQL *i*DataAgent full backup is not necessary. Note that in such a case, this option only needs to be selected if a SQL *i*DataAgent full backup exists which is later than the full backup currently restored on the client by a third-party software.

Restore Time and Time Zone

Specifies the restore time depending on the selected options:

- For a multiple database or a full instance restore, this option indicates the time to which you want to restore all selected databases.
- For a single database restore, this option appears as a list of available backups from which you can select to restore.

• For a SQL Step Restore, this option appears as a list of available transaction log backups from which you can select a single log for restore.

For a QR Volume Step Restore, this option appears as a list of available transaction log backups from which you select a log for restore.

While the SQL Server *i*DataAgent functionality applies one log only, for the QR Volume the step restore applies the selected log and all logs that occurred prior to the selected log.

Restore Time

Provides a space for you to enter the date and time. Click the arrow to display a calendar.

• Time Zone

Lists the time zones. To change the time zone, select one from the list.

• Stop at mark

Specifies that the restore operation must restore to the point of the marked transaction. This option is displayed when Transaction Marks are restored.

• Stop before mark

Specifies that the restore operation must restore to the point when the marked transaction is committed. This option is displayed when Transaction Marks are restored.

Recovery Type and Undo Path

Specifies the type of recovery that must be performed. This is the state of the database after the restore.

Recovery

Specifies that the database will be fully operational.

• Norecovery

Specifies that the database will be offline.

• Stand By

Specifies that the database will be in the read-only state (transaction logs may be applied)

• Undo File Path

Displays the path in which the undo file is stored, when the **Recovery Type** is **Stand By**. Use the space to modify the default path.

Once the restore is complete, the SQL Server *i*DataAgent will use the data from the undo file and the transaction log to continue restoring the incomplete transactions. Hence, once the restore completes, the undo file will be re-written with any transactions that are incomplete at that point.

• Browse - Click to select a path for the Undo File Path.

Restore Options

• Unconditionally overwrite existing databases or files

When this option is checked, data being restored is unconditionally written to the specified location and will overwrite the files of any database that is currently using the database name specified by you. This implements the T-SQL REPLACE command.

When the option is unchecked, restore prevents the accidental data files overwrite by failing the job.

• Leave database in DBO use only state

Specifies whether the restore operation leaves database in the DBO_ONLY state where only the owner of the database can access the database.

• Preserve Replication Settings

Specifies to restore backups of replicated databases. A published database can be restored to a server other than the server where the database was created. This is relevant only to full backups and if the database database was part of a replication implementation. This option is available only when the **Recovery** type option is selected.

• Keep Change Data Capture

Specifies to restore SQL 2008 databases if they were backed up with the Change Data Capture property enabled. This property provides the ability to query a database for changed data. This is a useful SQL feature in that all change activity (insert, update, and delete) is captured and applied to SQL tables. The details of the changes are available in an easily consumed relational format. This option does not apply to backups that were VSS-enabled or to SnapProtect backups.

Advanced

Click to select additional restore options.

Save As Script

Click to open the Save As Script dialog, which allows you to save this operation and the selected options as a script file (in XML format). The script can later be executed from the Command Line Interface using goperation execute command.

When you save an operation as a script, each option in the dialog will have a corresponding xml parameter in the script file. When executing the script, you can modify the value for any of these XML parameters as per need.

To view the XML values for each of the options in the dialog, see the following:

Command Line XML Options

Back to Top

Job Initiation

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Immediate

Run This Job Now

Specifies this job will run immediately.

Schedule

Specifies this job will be scheduled. When you click Configure, the Schedule Details dialog box will open and allow you to configure the schedule pattern.

Result file location on CommServe

This option is only applicable for List Media operations. Specifies the name of the file in which the results of the scheduled list media job must be saved. Click **Browse** to access to the **Directory Browse** dialog box which allows you to select the folder / file in the CommServe computer.

Automatic Copy

Specifies that an auxiliary copy operation will be performed at the interval specified. This operation will occur when new data that must be copied is found on the primary copy.

Interval

The time interval in which the Automatic Copy will be performed. The default interval is 30 minutes.

Save As Script

Click to open the Save As Script dialog, which allows you to save this operation and the selected options as a script file (in XML format). The script can later be executed from the Command Line Interface using qoperation execute command.

When you save an operation as a script, each option in the dialog will have a corresponding xml parameter in the script file. When executing the script, you can modify the value for any of these XML parameters as per need.

To view the XML values for each of the options in the dialog, see the following:

Operations Supporting Save As Script

Configure Alert

Provides the necessary options to configure the alerts associated with this operation.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure necessary alerts for this operation.

• Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Advanced

Click to select additional options.

Script Preview

Click to display the restore script, based on the selected restore options, that will be submitted to RMAN when restores are performed for the selected Oracle client.

Advanced Restore/Recover/Retrieve Options (General)

Use this dialog box to access additional restore/recover/retrieve options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the component installed on the client.

Use hardware revert capability if available

Specifies whether to revert the data to the time when the snapshot was created. Selecting this option brings back the entire LUN to the point when the snapshot was created, overwriting all the modifications to data since the snapshot creation. This option is only available if the snapshot engine used for SnapProtect backup supports the revert operation.

Use RMAN Restore

Specifies whether to use RMAN for the restore operations.

Use FileSystem Restore

Specifies whether to use file system for the restore operations.

Advanced Restore Options (Pre/Post)

Establish pre/post processes for restore jobs, and the account that has permissions to run these processes (for Windows-based agents).

Pre Recovery Command:

Displays the name/path of the process to run before the restore. Add or modify the name/path, or use the **Browse** button to search for and select the name/path. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Post Recovery Command:

Displays the name/path of the process to run after the restore. Add or modify the name/path, or use the **Browse** button to search for and select the name/path. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Run Post Restore Process for all attempts

Specifies whether this process will execute for all attempts to run the phase. Selecting this option will execute the specified process for all attempts to run the phase, including situations where the job phase is interrupted, suspended, or fails. Otherwise, when the checkbox is cleared the specified process will only execute for successful, killed, or failed jobs.

Pre/Post Impersonation

For Windows-based agents, you must designate either the Local System Account or, for added security, another account as having permission to run these commands for restore jobs.

• Use Local System Account

Normally, the Local System Account has permissions to access all the data on the local computer.

• Impersonate User

Select this check box to enable the User Name and Password boxes. If the Impersonate User account defined here is not available, restore jobs using pre/post commands will fail. This account operates independently of the Impersonate User account for backup jobs.

• User Name

Enter the Window's user account name which will have permission to execute the desired commands.

Password

Enter the corresponding password for this account.

• Confirm Password

Enter the password again for this account.

Advanced Restore Options (Copy Precedence)

Choose the copy from which you wish to recover or retrieve. Select from the following options:

Restore from copy precedence

When selected, the system retrieves the data from the storage policy copy with the specified copy precedence number. If data does not exist in the specified copy, the operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy.

When cleared, (or by default) the system retrieves data from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data was pruned from the primary copy, the system automatically retrieves the data from the other copies of the storage policy starting with the copy with the lowest copy precedence and proceeding through the copies with higher copy precedence. Once the data is found, it is retrieved, and no further copies are checked.

Copy Precedence

Specifies the precedence number with which the system recovers or retrieves data from the copy.

Advanced Restore Options (Data Path)

Select the data path for the restore/recovery operation. You can specify the MediaAgent, Library, Drive Pool, and Drive from which the restore operation must be performed.

Use MediaAgent

Specifies the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to perform the restore operation. If necessary, you can change the name of the MediaAgent.

For example, if the library is shared and you wish to use a specific MediaAgent (instead of the system selected MediaAgent, or a MediaAgent which may be idle, or less critical) or if you know that the media containing the data you wish to restore is available in the library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

If the media containing the data is not available in the tape/optical library attached to the MediaAgent, the system will automatically prompt you to insert the appropriate media. In the case of a disk library, the operation will fail if the requested data is not available in the disk library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

Use Library

Specifies the name of the library that will be used to perform the restore operation. Use this option when you wish to restore using a specific library.

For example, if you know that the media containing the data you wish to restore is available in a specific library.

Use Drive Pool

Specifies the name of the Drive Pool that will be used to perform the restore operation. Use this option when you wish to restore using a specific Drive Pool.

To restore NAS data, select the drive pool type that was used to perform the backup, *i.e.*, if a drive pool associated with an NDMP Remote Server was used to perform the backup, select a drive pool associated with an NDMP Remote Server. Similarly, if an NDMP drive pool was used, specify an NDMP drive pool.

Use Drive

Specifies the name of the drive in the drive pool that will be used to perform the restore operation. Use this option when you wish to restore using a specific Drive in the Drive Pool.

Use Proxy

Specifies the name of the proxy server that will be used to perform the restore operation. Use this option when you wish to restore using a proxy server.

Advanced Restore Options (Encryption)

Pass-Phrase

Enter the pass-phrase that is currently assigned to the client, whose data you are restoring. Note that if you have changed the pass-phrase since you secured the client data, you need to provide the new pass-phrase here, not the old one.

Re-enter Pass-Phrase

Re-enter the pass-phrase for confirmation.

If you attempt an immediate restore of encrypted data that was pass-phrase protected without entering the pass-phrase here, the restore operation will fail.

If you have an exported pass-phrase set up, and you enter the pass-phrase under **Decryption**, you over-ride (not overwrite) the client properties pass-phrase. Thus, if you enter the pass-phrase incorrectly, the restore does not complete successfully.

Advanced Restore Options (Options)

Use this dialog box to make modifications in the names and locations of databases for restore.

Database

Displays the name of the database. You can edit the name by clicking within the box. Changes cause the data to be restored to a new database on the selected server.

For a detailed description on how to change the name of a SQL database, see the procedure titled "Restore a Database with a Different Name" in Books Online.

Device Name

Displays the device name of the database.

File Name

Displays the name of the database file to be restored.

Physical Path

Displays the complete path to the selected database file. You can edit the path by clicking within the box. Changes cause the database files to be restored to a new location. If the specified path does not exist, it will be created during the restore process.

For SQL, if the database file path is changed without changing the name of the database, then the existing database will be overwritten and will point to the new location. For a detailed description, see the procedure titled "Restore with a Different Data File Path" in *Books Online*.

Size (MB)

Displays the size of the database file in megabytes.

Find & Replace

For SQL, click to change multiple Database Name or Database File Path.